

Dear Reader: Thank you for downloading this free book from Brian W. Kelly. I finished the book titled **Truth, Justice, & the American Way!** <https://letsgopublish.com/publish/founding/truthjustice.pdf> in April 2024. I hope you find this book helps you excite your patriotic juices. In essence the book is about the need for a Superhero to help the world with today's nuances.

**Most of my books had previously been published on Amazon.**

Click below if you would like to donate to help the free book cause:  
<https://www.letsgopublish.com/books/donate.pdf>

**Enjoy!**

## About the images

So who owns Superman? The copyright on the Superman character is now jointly owned by DC Comics and by Joanne Siegel and Laura Siegel Lawson. Most works featuring Superman – comic books, movies, cartoons, etc. – are still property of DC.

When I first tried to publish this book, I wrote for permission to use the several images that are owned by DC Comics and I had no luck. So when I published this book with Xlibris , I took the pictures out at their behest.

Since this is an offering for a free book, and since I asked in good faith, I restored the images from my earlier edition. If DC Comics or Joanne Siegel and Laura Siegel object to this just contact me and I will remove the pictures immediately and put up a new version.

In the meantime, I want to thank the Siegals and DC Comics for their loan to make the reading more pleasant. Thank you. Feel free to thank them also!

# Truth, Justice & The American Way

America could use a Superhero  
to help the country  
while fighting WOKISM right now

By  
Brian W. Kelly

**LETS GO United States of America!**

# Truth, Justice & the American Way! 2024

*America could use a Superhero to help the country*

Has it ever been more important for Americans to ask these questions: What kind of country do we want to live in, work in, and raise our families in? What kind of America do we believe in? Is it important to love our country? Could we use a **Man of Steel** such as Superman to help us—all of America and all Americans in fighting and winning against our big problem with our country.

Learn about Truth, Justice, & the American Way by reading this book about how we can get on top of our problems and win the day. In addition to learning, we can do what is necessary to fight for our country in the best way. Learning about America, and its greatest attributes and operating within the finest principles of our nation, may be the best thing you can do to understand and make the most of our great form of government.

With so many positives such as a strong healthcare system, excellent schools, and a large range of recreational opportunities, the country offers a high standard of living that is hard to beat. If you are looking for a better quality of life, for most of the world, the USA is the perfect destination to call home and it attracts more immigrants than any other country. That's not to say it can't be better.

Additionally, this book is a great starter book for Americans wanting to refresh their knowledge or learn about the principles of the government of America and to be better prepared to react to the overreach of corrupt politicians and off the wall political notions. Without the knowledge that you can gain easily in this book, for example, you might unknowingly sign up for a socialist progressive government that takes away your rights, and makes you dependent on government employees all your life. I kid you not.

Political ideology in the US is often described in a left-right spectrum with liberalism on the left and conservatism on the right. Those with beliefs in between are less visible and are often called moderates. Today more than ever with US chief executives especially those in Big Tech, ignoring the Constitution and executing the office in a lawless fashion, Americans need to know their rights and the protections built into the basic framework of our government. It is in this book.

Just because one powerful person chooses to ignore our rights and freedoms does not mean you must endure their tyranny. The first step of course is to understand the most basic written precepts. Reading this book is a must for every US citizen.



**BRIAN W. KELLY**

Copyright © 2024

Editor:

**Truth, Justice & the American Way 2024**

*America could use a Superhero to help the country*

B. W. Kelly

Brian P. Kelly

Author B. W. Kelly

**All rights reserved:** No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form, or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, scanning, faxing, or by any information storage and retrieval system, without permission from the publisher, LETS GO PUBLISH, in writing.

**Disclaimer:** Though judicious care was taken throughout the writing and the publication of this work that the information contained herein is accurate, there is no expressed or implied warranty that all information in this book is 100% correct. Therefore, neither LETS GO PUBLISH, nor the author accepts liability for any use of this work.

**Trademarks:** A number of products and names referenced in this book are trade names and trademarks of their respective companies.

**Referenced Material :** *Standard Disclaimer: The information in this book has been obtained through personal and third party observations, interviews, and copious research. Where unique information has been provided or extracted from other sources, those sources are acknowledged within the text of the book itself or at the end of the chapter in the Sources Section. Thus, there are no formal footnotes nor is there a bibliography section. Any picture that does not have a source was taken from various sites on the Internet with no credit attached. If resource owners would like credit in the next printing, please email publisher.*

**Published by:** LETS GO PUBLISH! PO BoX  
**Editor** Brian P. Kelly  
**Email:** info@letsGOPublish.com  
**Web site** www.letsGOPublish.com  
**Write to** PO Box 621 Wilkes-Barre PA 18701

Library of Congress Copyright Information Pending

**Book Cover Design by Michele Thomas**

**ISBN Information:** The International Standard Book Number (ISBN) is a unique machine-readable identification number, which marks any book unmistakably. The ISBN is the clear standard in the book industry. 159 countries and territories are officially ISBN members. The Official ISBN For this book is shown on the book cover \_\_\_\_\_

The price for this work is: **\$18.95 USD**  
 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

Release Date: April 2024





## Dedication

*To my two best friends,*

*Dennis Grimes and Gerry Rodski.*

*Thank you for all of your support in my writing  
and publishing efforts.*

*You guys are the best.*





# Acknowledgments

In every book that I write or edit, I publicly acknowledged all of the help that I have received from many sources. Some of these wonderful people are still on earth and others have made their way to heaven.

I would like to thank many people for helping me in this effort. I appreciate all the help that I received in putting this book together, along with the 317 other books from the past.

My printed acknowledgments were once so large that book readers needed to navigate too many pages to get to page one of the text. To permit me more flexibility, I put my acknowledgment list online at [www.letsGOPublish.com](http://www.letsGOPublish.com). The list of acknowledgments continues to grow. Believe it or not, it once cost about a dollar more to print each book.

Thank you all on the big list in the sky and God bless you all for your help.

Please check out [www.letsGOPublish.com](http://www.letsGOPublish.com) to read the latest version of my heartfelt acknowledgments updated for this book. Thank you all!

In this book, I received some extra special help from many avid writing efforts from supporters including Dennis Grimes, Gerry Rodski, Wily Ky Eyely, Angel Irene McKeown Kelly, Angel Edward Joseph Kelly Sr., Angel Edward Joseph Kelly Jr., Angel Ann "Dear Dear" Flannery, Angel James Flannery Sr., Angel James Flannery Jr., Mary Daniels, Bill Daniels, Angel Robert Gary Daniels, Angel Sarah Janice Daniels, Angel Punkie Daniels, Joe Kelly, Diane Kelly, Brian P. Kelly, Mike P. Kelly, Katie P. Kelly, Angel Breezie Kelly, Angel Brady Kelly, Angel Ben Kelly, and Angel Budmund (Buddy) Arthur Kelly.



## Preface

Here we are citizens in a truly exceptional country. Yet, even here in America all is not perfect. But, if we don't smarten up, things will get a lot worse and they may never get better again.

Taxes are too high, elected officials are out of touch, government is too big, spending is out of control; the once new healthcare program, ObamaCare is often seen as a train wreck. The federal government is incompetent, the people have no voice in government, too many people are too lazy to hold government accountable; too many are on the take... Too many people do not love the country and even big Tech is getting too big and sometimes too woke for its britches and the Cancel Culture is tough to endure. There's lots more! Some think our best solution is help from Krypton or another far off planet. The man of steel's help would be most appreciated.

Learn about America and the help it needs and can get by reading this book. It is the best thing you can do to understand our great country and our great form of government, before the bad guys succeed in taking it away from us.

This book is the best starter book for anybody wanting to refresh their knowledge or learn about the government of the United States of America and to be better prepared to react to the overreach of today's corrupt politicians. Without the knowledge that you can gain so easily in this book, for example, you might unknowingly sign up for a socialist progressive government that takes away your rights, and makes you dependent on government employees for the rest of your natural life. I kid you not.

Today more than ever with our chief executive ignoring the Constitution and administering the office in lawless fashion, Americans need to know their rights and protections built into the basic framework of our government – the Constitution.

Just because one powerful person chooses to ignore our rights and freedoms does not mean we must endure the tyranny. The first step of course is to understand America's revolution, its founding, and its most basic written precepts. Reading this book is a must for every US citizen.

If you have been paying attention to what is going on in America today, you know that we are in trouble with things like Big Tech out of control, plus Wokism and Critical Race Theory is too prevalent in our schools.

We have a busted economy, high unemployment, no jobs for Americans, and our basic rights to freedoms such as speech, religion, the press, and our right-to-bear-arms are being impinged. The founders saw it as a civic duty for Americans to *pay attention* to our government so that we can avoid being chumps and being snookered by crooked politicians.

You and I know that there are more issues than just those noted above, and we better fix them quickly while we still have an America. Isn't this a shame on US? I think that is why you bought this book. Thank you very much.

We are on the same side, and together we can all help. We first must understand what is going on and we then must understand our rights. Even before you and I and everybody else are on board, you must start the first wave of solutions by opening your windows all the way and shouting as loud as you can: "I am mad as hell, and I am not going to take it anymore." Now, didn't that feel better?

Then, after you read this book, you must make sure that you talk to all of the other dummmies out there that you know—people like you and I and others, and let's help them know that it is time. It is time to get off the couch and act. Unless we all fully engage in America, when we wake up from our deep fog, there may be no America left for our progeny. We will have blown it for sure if that is permitted to happen.

In this book, we unabashedly recommend to stop trusting government, run by Republicans or Democrats, since it is clearly not working for our best interests. The sooner we can understand the active threat from the left and the passive threat from the right, the sooner we can move on to solving the problem for our values, our country, and our freedom.

It will be tough to wage this war against the corrupt politicians and the corrupt media if we are not even permitted to help on the battlefield when America is hanging by just a thread. The smarter we are, the more chances we have for success.

B. W. Kelly monitors what is happening to our government and he has written extensively on the major problems our country faces. Kelly is one of America's most outspoken and eloquent conservative spokesmen. He is the author of many great books such as *No Amnesty! No Way!*, *Saving America*, *Taxation Without Representation*, *Kill the EPA!*, *Jobs! Jobs! Jobs!*, *The Federalist Papers*—a total of 317 books. All books are available are listed at [www.letsgopublish.com.com](http://www.letsgopublish.com.com). Many have been and some are still available at national bookstores.

Like many Americans, B. W. is fed up with a stifling socialist progressive Marxists sitting in the top seat in Washington, DC. The progressives place the needs of everybody else in front of the needs of Americans. Like many Americans, Kelly is shocked at how brazen our President has become in ignoring our Constitution.

B. W. Kelly has read the founding documents, the underlying intelligence reports, and he has researched and written about such topics for years. Brian has written three hundred seventeen books and hundreds of articles.

Kelly is deeply concerned about how intolerable the results of poor government policy can be within our neighborhoods and our lives. His comprehensible and sane recommendations in this book are explained in detail within the covers of this soon-to-be classic edition. Superman would be pleased to endorse this book for America and Americans.

More and more Americans are clamoring for jobs but all that has been given by the government to the people is lip service. Both parties permit it. Americans want to keep their health insurance and pick their own doctors, and they want to be able to afford the insurance. If the President put his name to a plan like that, he might have had our support. Instead, the people no longer trust the government and the country seems to be getting worse rather than improving.

Unfortunately there is reason to believe that our president, who is a slipping in many ways, would like nothing more than to be a dictator of America so that he does not have to abide by our Constitution and our American values.

Unbelievable as it may seem, too often than not, even Republicans give him what he wants. Americans who know their rights vote out scoundrels from office to protect America and Americans.

In his more than three years, this president has tried to take away our guns; ram a health scam on Americans that includes death panels for the elderly and infirm; grant illegals citizenship while handing them benefits paid by hard working Americans, including free education; and finally he encourages foreigners to take more American jobs and there is no punishment. If the man of steel were available for duty, we would have a better chance for success.

Truth, Justice, & the American Way! 2024 is a title to get your attention. I hope my dad got it. In addition to reviewing some good quality history, B. W. Kelly has included a major civics lesson in this book to bring you up to date on the national scene. Additionally, he has included snippets of the founding documents so that you can read them in this book, rather than on the Internet.

You are going to love this book since it is designed by an American for Americans. Few books are a must-read but Truth, Justice, & the American Way! 2024 will quickly appear at the top of America's most read list.

Sincerely,

Brian P. Kelly, Editor





## Table of Contents

**Part I**

Chapter 1 America In Need of a Comeback .....	1
Chapter 2 A Welcome American Helper .....	7
Chapter 3 New Superman Would Target WOKE .....	23
Chapter 4 The Land of the Free and the Home of the Brave” .....	41

**Part II: Why Book Is Necessary Today? 51**

Chapter 5 Are You Mad as Hell About Your Government! .....	51
Chapter 6 Are Americans Simply Dumm Suckers?.....	61

**Part III: Brief History of the USA 73**

Chapter 7 Introduction to Colonial History .....	73
Chapter 8 America Before Columbus .....	77
Chapter 9 America Post Columbus and Pre-Revolution .....	81
Chapter 10 England Dominated the New World .....	95

**Part IV: The Revolution 99**

Chapter 11 The Seeds of Revolution .....	99
Chapter 12 The Honeymoon Is Over .....	105
Chapter 13 The Beginning of the American Revolution .....	113
Chapter 14 The American Revolution Summary .....	123
Chapter 15 The End of the Revolutionary War .....	129

**Part V: Meaning of Founding Documents 133**

Chapter 16 The Forming of the United States Government .....	133
Chapter 17 The Constitution, An Awesome Document .....	139
Chapter 18 Introduction to the Federalist Papers #1 .....	147
Chapter 19 Introduction to the Federalist Papers #2 .....	157

**Part VI: Civics Lesson 169**

Chapter 20 The Study of Civics .....	169
Chapter 21 Various Government Structures .....	181
Chapter 22 Principles of a Constitutional Democracy .....	191
Chapter 23 The Bill of Rights and More .....	199

**Part VII: Appendices – Founding Documents 205**

Appendix A: The Declaration of Rights and Grievances .....	205
Appendix B The Articles of Association .....	209
Appendix C The Declaration of Independence .....	213
Appendix D The Articles of Confederation .....	217
Appendix E The Constitution of the United States of America .....	225
Appendix F The Bill of Rights & Constitutional Amendments .....	235
Appendix G Constitutional Amendments Not Ratified .....	245

## About the Author



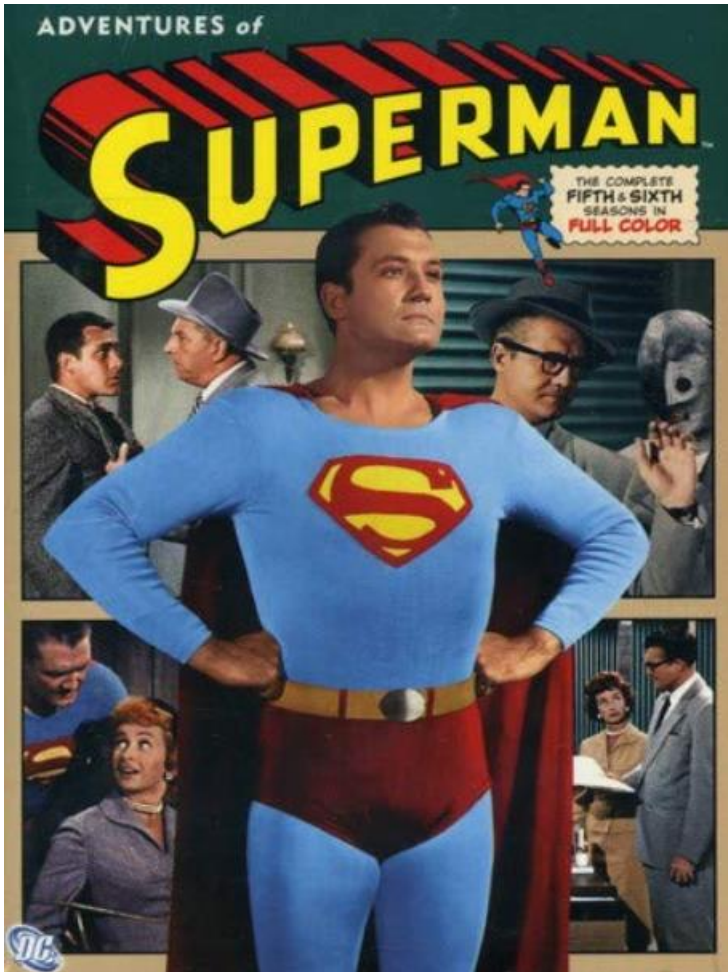
B. W. Kelly retired as an Assistant Professor in the Business Information Technology (BIT) program at Marywood University, where he also served as the IBM i and midrange systems technical advisor to the IT faculty. Kelly designed, developed, and taught many college and professional courses. He is also a contributing technical editor to a number of IT industry magazines, including "The Four Hundred" and "Four Hundred Guru" published by IT Jungle.

Kelly is a former IBM Senior Systems Engineer and he has been a candidate for US Congress, the US Senate and Mayor of his home town in Pennsylvania. He has an active information technology consultancy. He is the author of 303 books and numerous articles. Kelly is a frequent speaker at COMMON, IBM conferences, and other technical conferences. Ask him to speak at your next Conservative / Populist rally!

Over the past ten years, B. W. Kelly has become America's most outspoken and eloquent conservative protagonist. Besides *Just Say No to Chris Christie for President*, Kelly is also the author of *No Amnesty! No Way!*, *Taxation Without Representation*, and many other patriotic books.

Endorsed by the Independence Hall Tea Party, Kelly ran for Congress against a 13-term Democrat; took zero campaign contributions, spent enough to buy signs and T-shirts, and as a virtual unknown, he captured 17% of the vote—[www.briankellyforcongress.com](http://www.briankellyforcongress.com). Kelly then supported Republican challenger Lou Barletta, a conservative leader on immigration policy, and helped him win a resounding victory in the general election.

# Chapter 1 America In Need of a Comeback



A Great Superman Comic Cover

Have you ever felt that it was more important to ask these questions than it is today? What kind of country do you want to live in, work in, and raise your family in? What kind of America do you believe in? Is it important to love your country?

I am not the only one with the message that we, as a country have gone off the path. Tom Klingenstein, chairman of the Claremont Institute, a public speaker, a writer, and a person who is even a playwright on the side has labeled the phenomenon correctly. Other than the 2020 riots and the “Summer of love,” we can technically

say we are not engaged in a hot war in America. But, Klingenstein believes that we are in a cold civil war. I do too! Don't you? A COLD CIVIL WAR. Think about it! Great term!

We all know what the enemy is. He has a name for that too. Klingenstein calls the enemy "WOKE Comms." Perhaps it reads better as WOKE Commies. The war is progressing and the good guys are losing in large measure because Republican leaders, who purport to be the new good guys have yet to fully engage. From my perspective, they have yet to show they care. When Democrats are acting so reprehensibly, Republican leaders are now getting more and more scrutiny and unfortunately, they are not measuring up as well as they should.

Klingenstein is one of our unsung leaders as he is not necessarily the best known. He should be. His essays, speeches and plays all encourage Republican leadership to do what the people expect--think, talk, and act as if we are at war.

Republican leaders, the group who many of the sane people count on, are unfortunately teetering on. Why? Because they are too self-absorbed and they don't really seem to care what happens to regular Americans who need them—all of us, especially those who recently switched from the WOKE Party.

Mitch McConnell seems to be sponsoring a new elite wing of the Republican Party more concerned about making money from Chinese investments and getting along with despicable Democrats. More and more conservatives from Parler and other platforms have made it known that Mitch is not their favorite.

Even others go so far as to call him a traitor or a RINO (Republican in name only), while hashtags like #cocainemitch and #moscowmitch have become too popular to be ignored. Moreover, many theories abounded about McConnell's China investments preoccupying his thinking.

These include that he has connections to China through the family on his wife, Elaine Chao's side. There is a lot of money involved and China loves buying off American politicians including presidents.

Like most of us, Klingenstein has not given up but his analysis is depressing because it is spot on. Americans have found ourselves in this Cold Civil War and our most powerful “conservative” politicians don’t seem to know which side to pick.

The problem is not that we are unarmed. It is worse, We have no real generals. With Donald Trump for four years we had a real president but Republican Generals have disengaged in the Cold Civil War and are being beaten by the WOKE Democrats who stick together like it is a do or die fight. It sure seems like it is do or die so where are real conservative Republicans as leaders.

The leading Republicans who should be our generals fight battles, sometimes with spirit, but they don't seem to see the war properly and too often, they are content to join the other side. This war is not over the size of government or taxes, but over the American way of life. The Republicans for example, without a peep of opposition, let the opposition remove the *American Way* from Superman’s Motto-- Truth, Justice and the American Way.

Tell me how that happened—but it did and it is reflective of the Cold Civil War and the disconnect that somehow Republican leaders choose to employ in the fight if they fight at all. Is it cognitive dissonance or is it intentional. When Republican leaders are not even engaged it is tough for them to win elections.. .

Looking for symbols for each side, we find that the war is between those who salute the flag and those who take a knee. Think about it. The war is between those who believe that America is built on freedom, and those who believe America is built on racism. The war is built on those who are convinced that America is good, and those who are convinced America is bad.

These differences are simple but they are way too large to bridge. This is what makes it a war—a Cold Civil War. From Biden’s first day in office, Democrats are brazenly showing that their cards are all on the anti-American side. Guess which side of the Cold Civil War that choose?

From the current President’s day 1, Democrats who do not seem to be too fond of America have been in charge of the country—Congress—the House & the Senate, and the Presidency. The Republicans have no chiefs participating in running the government.

They run on mute all the time. The Republicans do not seem to be fighting as hard as they need for victory and that is why the WOKE Commies seem to be winning almost every battle in which they engage. Mitch McConnell thinks we have not noticed but we have.

Too many Republican do-nothing chiefs are way too invested in China to protect America and to fight the Pro-Chicom Democrats. The Chinese are not WOKE but they love the fact that the US is dawdling in wokeness while they are planning to beat the US—us in real battles.

Republicans and, we the anti-WOKE Commies, must take this seriously. Winning a war requires two fundamental understandings. First, we must understand that we are, in fact, in a war. Wartime requires very different rhetoric, attitude, strategy, and people than peacetime. We need a hardened wartime leader. We all know we can find someone who can be trusted regardless of his Rhetoric.

We know 100% what our enemy wants. It is the destruction of the American way of life—aka the American Way of the Superman Hero. WOKE Democrats will do whatever they can to help the WOKE crowd even if it hurts the USA. Moreover, unlike the selfish Republicans, the WOKE Democrats are always on duty. They go about their days by trying to force everyone to say “America is systemically racist.” Who has not heard that on any given day?

If the WOKE Commies can convince us of this falsehood, they will be well on their way to overturning the American way of life. They are no longer hiding their intentions. Every time the current President accuses America of being systemically racist, he is, though he doesn't know it, calling for the overthrow of the American way of life.

In a war, you must play to win. But you cannot win against an enemy that has no name or has many names, “identity politics,” “multiculturalism,” “racism,” “WOKEISM” and more. My entry for a name is “Woke Communism,” “Woke Commies” for short. Whatever the name, I think it should communicate totalitarianism and authoritarianism as in a world of mandates, because this is what the enemy seeks to impose.

We know that in traditional totalitarian regime, the government uses arbitrary violence to control every aspect of public and private life, all the way down to little league baseball and football. There is no freedom of thought. Nothing comes free. Looking deeper at it, we also know that totalitarianism with its associated authoritarianism is a form of government that attempts to assert total control over the lives of its citizens.

If you like your freedom, you won't like their style one bit. It is characterized by strong central rule that attempts to control and direct all aspects of individual life through coercion and repression. We see it everywhere today with a crooked media and a dedicated WOKE party. It does not permit individual freedom. Check your freedom at the door to join.

In America, it recently seems that the government is in control of everything. There is still time to escape its clutches. The government does not control everything yet, but it is working on it.

Today, through the power of the purse and the courts, the government influences a lot—way too much. And where the government leaves off, the cultural-business complex takes over. Corporations wield more power today than ever before. Moreover, they too often side with government to support nefarious missions.

If you watch the news regularly, you know that Education, corporate media, entertainment, big business, especially big tech, are to varying degrees aligned with the Democratic Party, which is now controlled by the Woke Commies.

Big Tech and other institutions together with the government function as a totalitarian regime, crafting narratives that advance their agenda and suppressing those that do not. No kidding. Not everybody plays nice. There ought to be a law!

The Administrations of our government may not look like a totalitarian regime, but over the years, they began to act like one. The WOKE riots are a case in point. Woke Commie agitators sparked the flame that lit the riots. Their intellectual leaders justified the riots; their corporate donors gave billions to the Black Lives Matter network; their media looked the other way. Meanwhile, their politicians, fanned the flames.

America needs Superman more than ever today and more and more good guys like John Catsimatidis and his show on WABC recognize it every day with their signoff for Truth, Justice, and the American Way.

I must admit, being from PA, and not having listened to WABC in about 60 years, when my older brother figured out how to tune our AM radio with the right aerial, that I have become a new fan and a new WABC weekday regular and weekends with Cousin Brucie.

I first finish with the local radio station WILK with Bob Cordaro and at one point it was Frank Andrews in the afternoon. When I looked for the show on the Internet I could not spell Catsimatidis but I quickly found actor, director & screen writer John Casavetes who died in 1989. It was not him.

His death gave him away. I knew I had the wrong guy before I found the WABC owner John Catsimatidis. Quite a guy!

Catsimatidis crew signs off every day with Truth, Justice & the American way. It gets the patriotism flowing and the thought of the great man of steel permeates the airwaves. When Mark Levin finally comes on a few minutes after 6:00 PM, if it were not the National Anthem, what other introduction would be appropriate. I've got the right intro one—coming up in the next chapter.



## Chapter 2 A Welcome American Helper



B/W TV Just after changing from Clark Kent – Out the Window!

“Look, up in the sky! It's a bird! It's a plane! It's Superman! Faster than a speeding bullet! More powerful than a locomotive! Able to leap tall buildings in a single bound!”

“Yes, it's Superman, strange visitor from another planet, who came to Earth with powers and abilities far beyond those of mortal men. Superman, who can change the course of mighty rivers, bend steel in his bare hands, and who, disguised as Clark Kent, mild-mannered reporter for a great metropolitan newspaper, fights a never-ending battle for **Truth, Justice and the American Way.**”

**How about this as the introductory text to the new Superman TV Show in 1948,? By the way 1948 happens to be the year I was born.**

Would Superman, if he came today, find a welcoming earth? The earth is a much different place in terms of the lifestyles of its inhabitants compared to 1948 when the first Superman was “born.” Would Superman be welcome today? Would anybody trust him? Would WOKE inhabitants disparage him?

Some of us, such as myself, who came to earth in Pennsylvania in 1948, from our first days at the TV set and some at the movies, have seen Superman walk amongst us on the big screen and little screen coincidentally since 1948. Well, what would we ask the man of steel if he showed up today in our midst?

Would we acknowledge that we could use his help to solve our many problems. I sure hope we would. Superman would be the last being in the universe to become WOKE.

But if DC Comics, formerly Action Comics, the supposed first imagineer of Superman, had its way, things would not go as well with the return. Along with many corporatists and big tech mammoths, DC Comics has gone WOKE. Yes it is unfortunate but it is true, After more than 50 years of upholding “truth, justice, and the American way, the holder of the Comic Book rights to the notion of Superman, has changed its motto because it was too American for a big worldwide company like DC Comics.

DC Comics, Inc. aka DC Comics, once known as Action Comics is one of the largest and oldest American comic book companies, with their first comic under the DC banner being published in 1937. It is now owned by Warner Entertainment which originated many moons ago as Warner Bros. Of course.

As a huge corporation, it existed for a while as Time Warner and then Charter Communications. Corporate Buyouts and musical corporate chairs never cease. This conglomerate’s last reported size was \$52 Billion. That’s very big now so they figure they can get by without the *American Way* as part of the motto. I am glad a guy with his own nice share of money but perhaps not as much as \$52Billion, John Catsimatidis is a real American and he understands the value of Truth, Justice, and the American Way. Thank you, John.



John Catsimatidis Does It His Way

DC Comics may have gotten too big for an American fan base and must have felt it was time to wake up to WOKE. Its new motto is more politically correct as DC Comics now seems to view the notion of America as politically incorrect.

And, so, now Superman, according to the corporate leaders must have a new less-American motto: The superhero will now stand for “Truth, justice, and a better tomorrow or just Truth & Justice. . Get the airline barf bags. DC Comics announced this in October 2021, during its DC FanDome event to little acclaim. I will change this text as soon as I am notified that this has changed. I sure hope it does.

DC Comics and all those who capitalize on the notion of Superman made their bones in America but they may now be too big for America. DC Comics reflects what is wrong with America and its hoity toity elite big shot corporations are bad news in America today. But it wasn’t always this way.

It did not happen overnight either. The founders outlawed . American corporations at the founding but before the first generation, the early Americans relented.

It was not too long after 1776—until the 1790s that the first American corporations were developed. The founders were wise as corporations once permitted almost instantly becoming key institutions in the young nation's economy. Now some corporations

think they are more important than America itself. Let's ask my new hero, John Catsimatidis what he thinks?

Americans are waking up in all parts of the country today and finding that the people who make the most off the sweat of their brow and whose products they had been gobbling up from time immemorial do not feel the same about them. For Superman, it has been since 1993—about thirty years ago.

Since then, the American Way mantra has fallen out of favor. The live-action series “Lois & Clark” and the 2006 feature film “Superman Returns” put a period at the end of the *American Way* sentence by using the shortened motto that Superman fights for “truth and justice.” Sometimes evolution is not a good thing. The John Catsimatidis Show on WABC uses the real version. *Truth, Justice & the American Way!* Bravo!!!

OK, TV was not how we were all introduced to Superman. But it sure is what made the notion even more popular than the “funny books.” Most know that the phrase Truth Justice & the American way came from the 1930's when Joe Shuster and Jerry Siegal created Superman. In the 1930's this was an important concept and in my opinion it is again today and with the help of WABC and John Catsimatidis and Mark Levin, the American Way is making a comeback. It is about time.

*Truth, Justice and the American Way* formed a deep contrast to what was going on in Europe after World War I and before World War II. Let's just say that the Pre-World War II Nazi propoganda was on the rise then and after 1948. The motto formed another major contrast to the Communists during the Cold War. Now, with Communism on the Rise in the US, we sure need a larger dose of the American Way.

For post WW II kids like me, growing up back then, who had never experienced war before, the news rhetoric of the 1950's was pretty scary and the sonic booms over schools during daytime hours made the threat of a hot war during the COLD WAR seem even more real while hiding under the grade school desks—at least a lot more than it should have been.

The first B/W Superman TV episode was not the first time stories had been told about a mythical super hero named Superman. In fact, by the time 1948 came about, the character Superman had already been well developed and a lot of the backdrop for the adventure, including the City of Metropolis, and Clark Kent, Lois Lane, Jimmy Olson and even Perry White, the non-descript editor of the Daily Planet were already part of Superman lore. .

From April of 1938, with the very first issue of *Action Comics* being published, came the first appearance of a character called 'Superman.' The Comic was created by Jerry Siegel and Joe Shuster. These two had been influenced by other action characters such as "Zorro," "John Carter Of Mars," *Robin Hood*, and a ton of other pulp science-fiction and adventure stories, of the era before . Superman of course as previously introduced, had discovered his vast amount of superpowers at a young age and decided to use them for the benefit of all of humankind. What a great notion.

Nobody really thought Superman in any form was anything more than science fiction. Though we all hoped he could be real. But it was a great thought considering the goodness the character represented. In the history of science fiction, the Golden Age as it has been called followed the "pulp era" of the **1920s and 1930s**, and preceded New Wave science fiction of the 1960s and 1970s. "Pulp had to do with the cheap paper used for the fiction stories.

The 1950s have gotten designated as a transitional period in this scheme. But, some who were in the thick of it, such as a gentleman named Robert Silverberg, who came of age in the 1950s, saw it as the decade of the true Golden Age.

Few alive today have not been well introduced to the types of themes promulgated by the Superman Adventures. You know what I mean. Can't you just envision the rescuing of a woman framed for murder and bringing the real killer to justice?

How about investigating corrupt politicians, beating the crap out of abusive husbands, and of course coming to the rescue of an investigative reporter named Lois Lane, whose life comes into peril by a gangster who is rebuffed by her and who refuses to take 'no' for an answer.

We who have ages on our personal odometers know that as the years went on, Superman's popularity increased amongst the general public, thanks to newspaper comic strips. We saw the Action Comics transition to DC Comics.

We saw a long-running radio show called *The Adventures Of Superman*, animated short films (aka cartoons) appearing in theaters, and a live-action television series also called *The Adventures Of Superman*, which (much like the hour-long feature film that preceded it, *Superman And The Mole Men*) starred George Reeves as Superman. It was as many would say, "good stuff."

Evolution can be a great thing for progress, for on December 15, 1978, after overcoming many an obstacle in giving the character his very own full-length feature film, Warner Bros. released *Superman: The Movie*. It was well enjoyed by the whole world and perhaps some residents of outer space...perhaps.

Some with great memories and with enough time on earth remember that *Superman: The Movie* told the story of the now famous Jor-El, played by Marlon Brando in the movie.

Jor-El was a scientist on Krypton. He had repeatedly attempted to warn the people of his home planet that their home had to be evacuated as soon as possible. Jor-El had learned that the planet Krypton was to be destroyed and forever-after, it would cease to exist. His pleadings, unfortunately for the citizens of Krypton, were ignored by the elders.

Worse than that, the elders would not permit his warnings to be spread to anyone else on the planet for fear of inducing panic. So, nobody knew their time was short. Not wanting his family to be victims themselves, as we know from Superman lore, Jor-El and his wife, Lara, were forced to make the painful decision to protect their legacy.

They decided to send their infant son, Kal-El, away to safety on a planet which could sustain life while they awaited their fate on Krypton. On the planet Earth--before Krypton exploded, they sent Kal-El off, on the big one-way trip. He fortunately landed in Kansas on the planet Earth.

More good fortune came their way when Kal-El was found by a family of kind-hearted Kansas farmers—Jonathan and Martha Kent. They raised him as their own child and named him Clark. After they discovered Kal-EL's travel ship and then learned of his superhuman abilities, they were concerned for him and wanted to assure a normal life for their child. They feared the rubber-neckers.

So, they encouraged Clark to keep his special abilities a secret from everyone around him. Obviously, there are a lot of snoopy people that possibly would cause untold issues for Clark and the Kent family if their special circumstances were well known. Not everybody is nice and kind but most humans do have a natural tendency to be inquisitive, nosy, and prying. The Kent's rightfully understood that this could hurt their family if the wrong people were to begin exploring.

In the story, Mr. Kent, who was Clark's step-dad eventually dies from a heart attack. At this point, eighteen-year-old Clark is old enough to go on his own and he leaves home. He travels the world to discover the truth about who and what he really is. He eventually arrives in the Arctic, where he constructs what is known as the Fortress Of Solitude.

Here is where the movie adventure includes some special effects as he is met by the remaining consciousness of Jor-El, shown in the picture above. Jor El gives his son a heartwarming father & son talk over space and time, which was one of Marlon Brando's highlighted parts in the movie. It was a tear jerker.

The part of the movie show that is newly minted is the touching insights from Jor El, played by Marol Brando. Brando was most impressive and quite touching in his farewell speech to his infant son. Knowing that neither he nor his wife, Lara, would ever see Kal-El again, he conveys all of the love for his son, along with the hope that not only will Kal-El live up to his potential and accomplish great things, but that he'll also inspire the inhabitants of his new home to do the same.

If you are wishing and hoping for a Superman return, then surely you and I both are hoping that Jor El's wish of Superman inspiring the 2022 inhabitants of earth in his return does come true.

In this educational journey, the former Kal El is also taught everything he needs to know about himself, his abilities, and where he really came from when the Kent's found him, This is his first of many lessons. It fills in a lot of blank spaces for Superman trekkers.



Jor El from Krypton – Superman's Real Father

Just like time on Krypton, time stops for no man—even Superman. After twelve years passed, after he gained his education via a technology they called intergalactic travel and it was completed, Clark Kent returns to earth as Superman. It sure came in handy that Superman could fly.

In 2024, would it not now be great if Superman were reincarnated in the galaxy and he came again to bail us from WOKE-ness and other maladies.

In this movie, Clark Kent and Superman are played by Jeff East as a teenager, and he is played by Christopher Reeve as an adult. When he arrives back on Earth, he is located in the city of Metropolis. He



uses his secret identity from his first arrival to get a position as a reporter for *The Daily Planet* alongside veteran investigative reporter Lois Lane (Margot Kidder in the movie).

As all Superman trekkers know, Clark Kent is attracted and in fact, moviegoers across the globe could easily tell that he is smitten by Lois Lane. Eventually, He makes himself known in Metropolis and to Lois Lane. Fans do not have to wait too long before Lois (who has no idea that Superman is really Clark Kent and vice versa) falls for Superman.

Unfortunately but expectedly for all but first time observers of the mythical man of steel, in this screen drama, both Superman and Lois find themselves in danger from the brilliant and evil criminal mastermind Lex Luthor, who is played in the movie by Gene Hackman.

Luthor , behaves as a typical Superman villain who will stop at absolutely nothing to carry out his master plan of whatever badness it may be.

In this movie, of course it is Lex Luthor's being able to acquire vast amounts of Nevada desert land that at the time is worth nothing to satisfy his big master plan. When, in this 1978 Superman movie classic, he began buying seemingly worthless land in the Nevada desert as part of his evil plot, he was certainly right about one thing. People will always need land and they'll (sometimes) pay through the nose to get it.

Advertising that Nevada would soon be prime coastal land would be tough to sell however, without giving away his full plot. So, just because he was willing to sell cheap land for a ton of money did not mean you could do anything you want with it—at least at the time. He secretly promised that the buyers would be able to quadruple their value because he planned to hack into U.S. military rockets, thereby reshaping the west coast and making all boats launch from “coastal Nevada.”

The hack was intended to cause the rockets to explode in the San Andreas Fault. It would thus destroy nearly the entire existing West Coast. They figured that by moving the West Coast and the Pacific Ocean to Nevada after buying up the desert, they would be rich

forever. Luther did not care at all about the decimation of life on the “former” West Coast.



A look at the nefarious Lex Luthor as played by Gene Hackman



A look at the lovely Lois Lane as played by Margot Kidder



A look at the handsome Clark Kent as played by Christopher Reeve RIP 10/10/2004



A look at the handsome Superman as played by Christopher Reeve RIP 10/10/2004

Christopher Reeve, quite handsome as both Clark Kent and Superman—as well a typecast as ever for Reeve looks almost exactly like the Action/DC Comic Strip Superman for sure if ever anybody could duplicate that look.

Of course this was not the last big screen version of *Superman*. *Superman III*, also starred the late Richard Pryor, and Annette O'Toole as Lana Lang. Many still consider this film to be underrated.

Do you remember the plot? Computer programmer Gus Gorman (Richard Pryor) was hired by financial tycoon Ross Webster (Robert Vaughn) to seize control of a weather satellite with the objective to annihilate Colombia's coffee crop.

Superman (Christopher Reeve) of course managed to thwart the plan. Webster commanded Gorman to use the satellite to locate kryptonite, the Man of Steel's mortal weakness. But a missing unknown element in the kryptonite -- replaced by Gorman with tar -- causes an unintended side effect when presented to Superman.

Richard Pryor had a conscience. He was guilt-ridden and horrified as Gus Gorman by the notion of "going down in history as the man who killed Superman, so Gus destroys the Kryptonite ray with a firefighter's axe. Superman escapes, but then the computer becomes self-aware, defending itself against Gus's attempts to disable it.

Many critics found fault with "Superman III," suggesting it was silly and simple like the Comic books, It dropped the threads of the first two movies -- including Lois Lane's increasingly complex love affair with Clark Kent and Superman -- and the movie went for more comic book action. Fans do not get the positive sense of sheer amazingness of Superman and the people in it take this incredible creature for granted.

There was another version called *Superman IV: The Quest For Peace*. This was the last *Superman* film featuring the original cast, including Reeve and Kidder.

There was another attempt at a *Superman* spin-off. It was the 1984 film titled *Supergirl*. This movie featured Helen Slater as Kara, cousin of Kal-El who somehow after the fact, also survived the destruction of Krypton, and who also decided to use her powers on Earth as a force for good. She was Supergirl.

Since your author is not a sexist, it would be OK with me if we earthlings in 2022 were visited by Supergirl rather than Superman as long as all other goodness and kindness attributes were the same.

Superman was not and is not finished yet as long as a crowd of fans can crowd into a movie theatre. There were some box office failures but not many. For example, the industry decided to reboot Superman in 2013, with Henry Cavill as Superman/Clark Kent, Amy Adams as Lois Lane.

Despite being arguably the most recognizable superhero of all time, modern Superman movies have struggled to be successful in all aspects. There was nothing like the first.

I am not sure why as I am a forever fan but for some, despite live-action appearances that go back as far as 1948's B/W TV show, Superman met some unsuccessful ventures in recent times. For example, the Man of Steel as we know has been no stranger to the movie theater, as he has been played by a number of different actors and has appeared in 11 different live-action films since the "series" creation.

Most of the early shows were found in black-and-white serials in the late 1940s and early 1950s, and of course there was George Reeves in 1948's TV show. Many of us recognize George Reeve as the real Superman from all the TV shows.

Despite the great start, as we discussed, the S character did not go to blockbuster status until 1978, with Richard Donner's groundbreaking *Superman: The Movie* which we just discussed. That film was great and it shattered box office expectations and for the special effects teams, it pushed the envelope way further than ever. It also introduced a Superman who looked like the Comic Strip Character and who showed off Christopher Reeve's timeless interpretation of the Superman character.

We covered most of the Superman venues already—other than the future—and so we know that movie theaters weren't the only place where people could see new and updated versions of Superman and company.

There was at one time, an ABC television series *Lois and Clark: The New Adventures Of Superman*, which instead of adventure was mostly romance and a smattering of romantic-comedy showing the goings on aspects of Clark and Lois's relationship.

The critics suggest that this show also brought lots of sexy stuff back to both characters, thanks to the chemistry of Dean Cain and Teri Hatcher...

Don't let us forget about the long-running and ground-breaking WB series *Smallville*, which starred Tom Welling as Clark, Kristin Kreuk

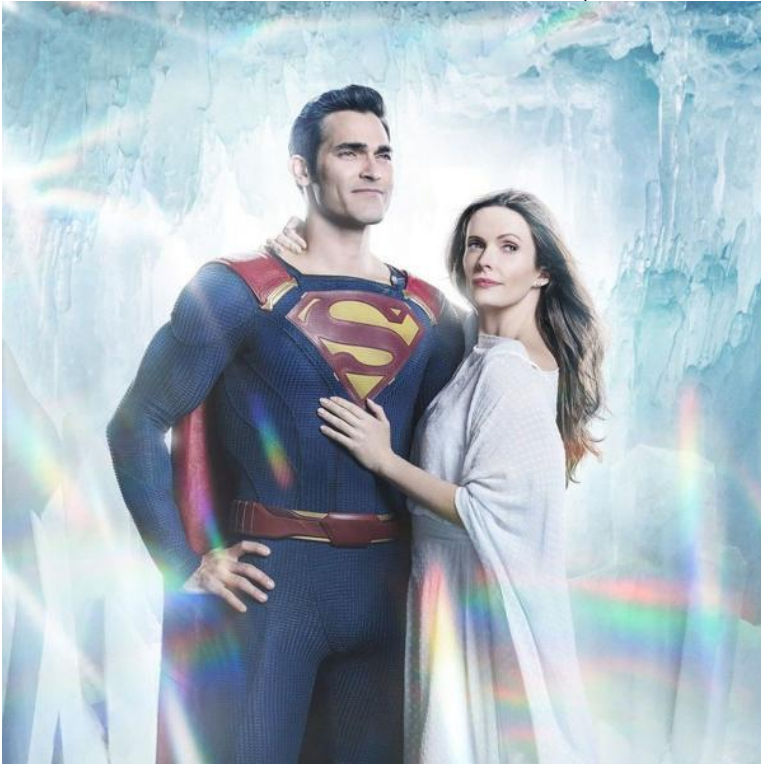
as Lana Lang, and Michael Rosenbaum as the infamous Lex Luthor.

I know I am not alone in hoping that just like the real housewives of suchetty-such, one day we will get to see The Real Superman and his 2024 Real Visit to Planet Earth. Let's all review all the old Superman's in whatever form we can so we will know how to behave when he comes.

Here we are after more than forty years after its theatrical release, *Superman: The Movie* continues to have its influence felt far and wide throughout the film industry, clearly evidenced by comic-book films that are released in theaters every year with much anticipation, excitement, and discussion.

Because of *Superman*, both audiences and filmmakers were shown what a comic-book film could truly be when its subject matter is taken seriously and not just treated like a low-budget exploitation film for everyone to quickly cash in on.

Now, let's try to find the best Lois Lane and Jimmy Olson and perhaps a real Perry White—perhaps a newsman like Brit Hume so that the Planet Earth and mostly America can benefit well from the Real Return of Superman – No Kidding.



Perfect!





## Chapter 3 New Superman Would Target WOKE

Boy have I had a great life so far. I am married to my college sweetheart and at 76 years of age, other than a gallbladder removal that set me back, I am feeling pretty good again. Actually, I feel very good. Too bad we are living in a confusing world.

It sure was refreshing and reassuring for me and others from the pre1950's Baby Boomers who got to hear the following phrase each week with the Superman TV series. We were definitely the good guys and we loved those words. You know what I mean—the words, “Truth, Justice and the American Way.” They are synonymous with “Life, Liberty and the Pursuit of Happiness.” Truth and Justice defined our American self-image in the 1950s and for many years until recently. And of course the American way was a given for all of us.

I was born in 1948, which as I pointed out was the first year of the George Reeves B/W Superman TV program. For those counting at home or anywhere else, there were actually a total of **76 million births in the United States from 1946 to 1964**. These are the nineteen (19 years) usually called the “baby boom.” Of the 76 million baby boomers born in the period, mostly all were George Reeve's Superman followers from when they were two years old.

Today, in 2024, the number of boomers left, counting the effects of immigration and deaths, the US baby boomer population remains as the second-largest population group in 2022, comprised of **69.6 million** people ages 58 to 76. I am 76 years old and I fit in nicely with this group and I love the American way.

In 1948 with Superman coming on board, it was in a very positive pro-American period and nobody of whom I am aware at the time was complaining. At least nobody was complaining out-loud. We were all much more patriotic back then. OK, I had not had birthday one yet but my dad told me all about it.

Today is not quite as patriotic. When George Reeves began his tenure as Superman the airwaves were bursting with patriotism and goodness. Many Americans would like a return to those days.

Today, unfortunately, lies, lies and more lies fill our daily lives. People will complain about the lies from people whom they dislike while readily promoting lies from people they do like. The GOP condemns “Lame Street media,” while Democrats rail against “Alt News,” but neither finds any fault with their own lies and distortions. We are definitely all sinners but we do not have to be such. Would it not be nice if we were different?

America is certainly in a funk in 2024 with sky high gas prices and record inflation affecting the poor more than anybody else—just trying to make ends meet. The rich seem unfettered and are seemingly OK with elite policies and wokeness. Some say that wokeness is on its way out but I’ll wait to see if that really happens.



WOKE Was Here Before George Floyd But Not That Much

They say that extremist political cycles seem to have a natural lifespan, but it requires real political will to overcome them.

2021’s November’s off year elections suggested that the coming rollback of wokeness, if not imminent, was even nearer than many had hoped. Voters overwhelmingly and decisively rejected two of wokeness’s core policy components: **1. Defunding the Police** and **2 Critical Race Theory**.

Across the country, defunding the police lost badly in heavily Democratic cities from Seattle to Minneapolis to Buffalo, while Republican Glenn Youngkin's vow to curb critical race theory in Virginia schools was central to his surprise win in the blue state. Who knows what will eventually happen with WOKE?

The hard core WOKERS don't really seem to be giving up much ground. And so, despite this setback, the biased liberal media keeps spouting like it runs the country rather than just reporting the news. The US media is full of WOKE>

Regarding extremist political cycles having a natural lifespan. I regret that I personally have not seen the left embrace the Constitution recently so this pass is not over—at least not yet.

But, we are not living in China or Russia, for sure. The United States still has free elections, a First Amendment and a Second Amendment, as well as a bunch of others called the Bill of Rights. It also has political norms which remain more or less intact, and WOKENESS at its worst is just an ideological, yet powerful movement. It has managed to humiliate its victims and get them fired from their jobs, but at least yet, it does not kill them as movements such as communism often do.

As I have already mentioned, I am a victim of a highly WOKE Amazon. They decided to terminate/cancel me after selling 290 of my book titles for years, because I did not worship them at the altar of WOKE. I have no resolution yet, but I have taken the matter to the courts.

I would agree that in recent years, never in American history has so much energy been devoted to getting people fired for expressing an opinion.

We have more than likely all experienced WOKENESS in our lives and it may well advance to the point where many of its goals become as institutionalized and naturally accepted as the abolition of slavery. (Some of the woke elect left style themselves as abolitionists).

Most experts on the subject matter expect that it will be rolled back one way or another. You may recall that its major practitioners and

cultural preferences first widely mocked and then ignored its victims—a good laugh for the victors.

2021 marked the first hint of even a miniscule real electoral pushback against WOKENESS. Many are hoping that it proves as pivotal as the battle of Stalingrad. It is hard to see it go away, however, without a major battle. Of course if the man of steel comes into our midst and we gain a little bit of that truth, justice and the American Way, it could be lots different—lots better. .

## **Why has WOKE been so tough to beat?**

WOKE has some of the elements of a new religion and its followers have been devoted but misguided practitioners. Somehow there are a lot of them. WOKE was made possible by social media, with the potential to organize as quickly as a Twitter mob.

The mob is not just a phenomenon of Twitter folks. Those who are adept at Civics can cite James Madison and his nightmare about mobs in democracies. More recently, legal scholar Jeffrey Rosen published a very insightful article in Atlantic titled “America is Living James Madison's Nightmare.” Rosen explains it well but does not offer copious solutions, He says that Madison and many of the other Founding Fathers were deeply suspicious of democracy. It was a great notion but few saw its pitfalls.

The danger posed by demagogues exploiting voters' biases and ignorance with great stories of democracy did not tell the full impact on the mob on what could happen.

Rosen's story has James Madison traveling to Philadelphia in 1787 with Greece and especially Athens on his mind. He had been with other founders at the Constitutional Convention the prior year reading about the history of the world which included the failed democracies. Madison did not want to be subjected to the shortcomings of democracy and was determined, in his part in drafting the Constitution, to avoid the fate of those "ancient and modern confederacies.

Madison believed they failed because they had succumbed to rule by demagogues and mobs. Think about the WOKE mobs of today.

Madison argued in the Federalist Papers that "In all very numerous assemblies, of whatever characters composed, passion never fails to wrest the scepter from reason," He shared the writing of the Papers with Alexander Hamilton and John Jay.

The Federalist Papers are well worth the read. I took a crack at writing a clean version titled *The Federalist Papers By Hamilton, Jay, and Madison: The Only Affordable & Unabridged Guide to the Federalist Papers* by B. W. Kelly (2016-05-15) Paperback – January 1, 1703

Madison's intention with the Federalist Papers was to build support for the ratification of the Constitution. A famous quote follows: "Had every Athenian citizen been a Socrates, every Athenian assembly would still have been a mob." Think about the origins of the Twitter mobs and the WOKE mobs.

Madison and Hamilton believed that Athenian citizens had been swayed by crude and ambitious politicians who had played on their emotions. Is Athens duplicated today in our times.

The Constitution was a product of substantial research by the Framers. Madison and others were concerned that the Articles of Confederation were imperfect and they wrote the Constitution to form a union of states that was more perfect than the Articles.

Madison believed that history was beginning to repeat itself in America. After the Revolutionary War, he observed in Massachusetts "a rage for paper money, for abolition of debts, for an equal division of property." That populist rage had led to Shays' Rebellion, which pitted a band of debtors against their creditors.

In order to keep the dangers of democracy in check, the Framers filled the Constitution with various constraints on popular rule. For example, they purposely chose not to design the American constitutional system as a direct democracy but as a representative republic. In the representative republic system of government, enlightened delegates of the people would serve the public good. Concerned about hot heads insisting on having their way, they also built into the Constitution a series of cooling mechanisms. These were intended to inhibit the formulation of passionate factions, to ensure that reasonable majorities would prevail on the issues.

The people would directly elect the members of the House of Representatives, but the popular passions of the House would cool in what they saw as the "Senatorial saucer," as George Washington is reported to have called it. Laws would not be enacted without both the House and the Senate confirming.

The Senate would comprise natural aristocrats who were not selected by the people but instead would be chosen by state legislators. Rather than directly electing the chief executive, the people would vote for wise electors (called the Electoral College) that is, propertied white men—who would ultimately choose a president of the highest character and most discerning judgment. The people of course in each state would select the state legislators who then would vote for the National Senators.

Another major facet to make the government work was called the *separation of powers*. The intent of this would prevent any one branch of government from acquiring too much authority. The framers were not looking to make the United States a dictatorship type of government or for authoritarian rule. They wanted rule by, of and for the people but not directly.

The further division of power between the federal and state governments would ensure that none of the three branches of government could claim that it alone represented the people. Unfortunately, as Rosen explains in his treatise, most of these constraints either never worked as intended, or have broken down over time, especially in recent years. For example, almost from the very first contested election (1796), shortly after the Constitution came into effect, the electors mostly functioned as ciphers for the party that selected them rather than exercising independent judgment.

By the time Thomas Jefferson came to power even the president's position had become more a partisan politician than an above-the-fray statesman. The 17th Amendment, of course, made the Senate popularly-elected (by the people instead of the state legislatures)

However, most states instituted de facto popular election of senators long before then, and it is far from clear that the Senate ever really constrained popular passions to the extent the Founders hoped it would. While federalism continues to be a useful safeguard against

majoritarian abuses by the federal government, the powers of the latter(the federal government) have grown enormously over time - far beyond anything envisioned by the Framers.

Rosen takes the time to describe how more recent developments have further unleashed the "nightmare" Madison feared—Mob rule. We see it with twitter mobs et al. For example, growing polarization and partisan hatred have exacerbated voter biases, and made them reluctant to curb the abuses of "their" side, lest doing so help the partisan enemy. a more populist presidential nomination process has in fact, increased the influence of ignorance, bias, and partisan hatred in selecting the chief executive.

Rosen is not all knowing but he offers great insights, He argues for example, that modern technology and social media have exacerbated the impact of biases and emotion, and weakened institutions that check them—Think about Big Tech and Twitter Mobs.

As a result of these and other factors, Rosen contends that we increasingly have a political system in which demagogic politicians exploit voter biases to promote policies that are often ineffective, or even actively harmful. Reading into Madison, we know that this is the very sort of danger that Madison sought to guard against. Humans unfortunately often behave in human ways and not too kingly.

Rosen's diagnosis of the problem is mostly accurate. A major contribution to the problem was created by the growth of government power. The enormous increase in the size, scope, and complexity of government since the 1930s has made it virtually impossible for voters to have more than a minimal understanding of most of what it does. As a result, most people are forced to rely on crude bits and pieces that help the people form opinions on candidates and issues, which in turn exacerbates many of the sorts of biases that Madison and the other Founders feared.

We know that Madison himself warned of this danger in his writings especially in Federalist 62, where he warned that "it will be of little avail to the people, that the laws are made by men of their own choice, if the laws be so voluminous that they cannot be read, or so incoherent that they cannot be understood." The growing scope of federal power also exacerbates partisan conflict, because both sides

understandably fear the consequences of ceding such vast authority to their opponents.

In essence, Madison feared that a great government such as the one the Framers wished to form with the Constitution, would be overruled by mobbish tendencies if it were not structured properly. The Madisonian model thus prescribes the structure of government in which the powers of the government are separated into three branches: executive, legislative, and judicial. Isn't it nice that his idea won the day as the Framers were battling out the structure of the Constitution. The re-coming of Superman into today's world would look at the Framers' work as well done/ Any Superman would like it for sure.

From the Constitution forward, even with the greatest set of laws any government ever had as a guidepost. there have been issues in which men of good had disagreements.

Going back to the financial crisis of 2008 and its aftermath we find its scant beginnings when it pulled the rug out from a generation of debt-ridden recent college graduates while giving business elites incentive to welcome diversions from a more class based leftism. It has a definite socialist / communist basis. Yet, Biden has not blamed WOKE on Putin. Small favors.

WOKE took less than a decade for a fringe to take hold. It was not an especially popular way of thinking and speaking initially. It was spawned in the humanities departments of prestigious universities with students and coffee breath professors at the forefront. It became the dominant discourse in all non-explicitly conservative media and, seemingly, the ideology of the Democrat Party which in many ways was a rebel without a cause.

The Democrat takeover occurred with stunning speed, while the initial popular resistance to it—chiefly the 2016 election of Donald Trump—served more as an accelerant than a brake. At most points of its existence, WOKENESS has been entrenched in the media, liberal foundations, and universities, as well as other institutions once thought of as mainstream and non-political. Nothing is the same anymore.



How about a top Navy admiral touting the work of Ibram Kendi and the American Medical Association officially calling for doctors to work absurd woke phraseology into regular communications with their patients. Did everybody go nuts all at once. Conservatives believe this to be so. Only sane people can defeat this. It surely is not good for America.

The question asked by those seeking the WOKE truth is much the same as the theme from over fifty years ago. What goes around! What's it all about?

### **“What’s It All About Alfie?”**

This 1967 movie which I saw in the big theatre in my home city when it was a current run hit, attempts to answer the same dilemma as WOKE-- What is the meaning of life? Check it out. Neither does a good job but it explains the attempts. Is there an answer?

Some remember an answer from the movie in 1967 when the song about the movie questions the meaning of life. Maybe the answer is the same. Maybe not! Maybe there is no answer. If you can figure it out from the movie, maybe you've got it made. Here is a snippet:

### **“What’s It All About Alfie?” The Song**

What's it all about, Alfie?  
 Is it just for the moment we live?  
 What's it all about when you sort it out, Alfie?  
 Are we meant to take more than we give?  
 Or are we meant to be kind?

And if only fools are kind, Alfie  
 Then I guess we are wise to be cruel  
 And if life belongs only to the strong, Alfie  
 What will you lend on an old golden rule

...

When you walk let your heart lead the way  
 And you'll find love any day Alfie, Alfie

The negative idea of wokeness (perhaps the most accurate) at its core is that America and the West are basically defined by their mutual systems of oppression. At the top of all the systems is the main pillar, which is (1) white supremacy, while secondary but important

ones are the (2) privileging of heterosexuality and (3) of men over women.

In that hollow idea, there is not too much for any of those who were once termed regular people. That's why most conservatives, especially those who once could have been allied with the "Tea Party" steer clear of all WOKE.

To be WOKE is to believe that all social life is permeated by these dominations, and that overturning them is a moral imperative. Radical leftists have held views like this for over a century, but their warm embrace by much of the establishment is a new thing. It is a hard notion from which to escape.

### **Would Alfie consider living at the Hotel California?**

Another meaning of life song is this great tune sung by the Eagles. It is a spooky song for sure and in some ways like Alfie, it projects the meaning of life if you can only figure it out. Here is a snippet. It is available in most online sources.

On a dark desert highway  
Cool wind in my hair  
Warm smell of colitas  
Rising up through the air  
Up ahead in the distance  
I saw shimmering light  
My head grew heavy and my sight grew dim  
I had to stop for the night

There she stood in the doorway  
I heard the mission bell  
And I was thinking to myself  
This could be Heaven or this could be Hell  
Then she lit up a candle  
And she showed me the way  
There were voices down the corridor  
I thought I heard them say

Welcome to the Hotel California  
Such a lovely place (such a lovely place)

...

"Relax, " said the night man  
"We are programmed to receive"

"You can check-out any time you like"

**"But you can never leave!"**

Now, the meaning of life maybe. There sure is a lot of meaning to the song *Hotel California* and not much of it has to do with the 1950's Baha Mexico Hotel California. There is lots on the Internet about the song and the hotel. I think you would find it worthwhile and perhaps if you take a WOKE spiritual Alfie with you, you can find the meaning of life.

Thank you to my source for these special words Musixmatch  
Hotel California lyrics © Cass County Music, Red Cloud Music,  
Fingers Music

Writing credits for the song are shared by Don Felder (music), Don Henley, and Glenn Frey (lyrics). Joe Walsh came up with the dual-guitar descending arpeggio part that ends the song: he did not, however, get writing credits.

### **The Meaning of Hotel California**

For the woke, their belief is steadfast that America's history of slavery and segregation are at its core, more important than virtually everything else. WOKENESS portrays itself as a struggle against whiteness, or white supremacy, rather than against white people themselves, a rhetorical evasion which ironically allows white people to become the main practitioners of woke politics. It's like their white-only mirror does not pick up their own image.

As you might think, with black activism, WOKENESS has a somewhat contradictory relationship. On one side it is given to displays of performative submissiveness to blacks for the cameras at least. For example, while fires from the George Floyd riots were still smoldering, for example, the nouveaux WOKE Nancy Pelosi and Chuck Schumer led Democratic members of the House and Senate to the halls outside the congressional visitor's gallery, where they donned kente cloth and knelt before the cameras; similar, if less striking, quasi-religious enactments continued throughout the summer.

A nice platitude for the new affinity to blacks came a few weeks later when the New York Times announced it would henceforth

capitalize black when it referred to race (white would remain lowercase) as its standard style.

This of course is to inevitably evoke the Bible's capitalization of pronouns referring to the deity. Virtually every national news organization followed suit. Of course, original thought in that circle is a rarity.

Can we call that Fake WOKE now. Sometimes WOKE is cool! What do you think? The true-blue WOKE person, whoever that may be, sees it for what it is but often does not speak up. When they do speak, they say things like "The racists are trying to be Fake WOKE now that we don't care about skin color anymore." Interesting!

On the other side of wokeness is a kind of paternalism—What's your name, call me daddy!-- which sees black Americans as people without much agency or control over their lives.

It has them defined and damaged by the past injuries of slavery and segregation and still burdened by chains of structural racism. The chains are seldom specified but are often so pervasive that standards of achievement and conduct appropriate for other Americans must be suspended for them.

Everybody is trying to give more than the inch that is due. Despite its apparent dominance in corporate media and major institutions, wokeness increasingly resembles what '60s era Maoists called a "paper tiger"; when confronted directly, as wokeness has seldom been in the past seven years, its popularity and power prove less than meets the eye. Tell that to the convinced media.

Well, one thing we know, if Superman ever came to earth again and became functional immediately as the people's hero, he would have the big WOKE mess to clean up to help us all get our good attitudes back.

Because our image of the Man of Steel is from the big screen and thus like us, human shaped, sometimes as we go back in the fiction it is hard to believe and in fact it is easy to forget.

Yet it is true that the Superman that we would have had if the motion screen were real, is an alien from another planet.. He is not human but who could tell. Most loving people would embrace Superman as human in an instant.

We often forget that. In other words, his arriving on Earth, technically would be no different than if he were shaped like a Martian or the Blob or Bugs Bunny. But Superman is not shaped funny. He is a fictionalized handsome version of any of us, better than on our best days.

So, if a real Superman were to show up one day out of the blue to lend we earthlings a hand, we would not have to be worried about being caught in a giggle fit since we would expect our fictionalized 1948-style image to be close to perfect and this alien would not look alien at all like Daffy or Howard the Duck. But he would have Superhuman powers. That folks is what makes him Superman.

Having a familiar look would be a good help in our coming to grips with the fact that a Superman was really among us. Rather than captivate all humans into a state of awe, I would bet that the overriding skepticism of our day would cause this new entrant into our world, to not be immediately accepted as one of “us.” But when it finally sunk in—watch out fella! Would it not be great to have a Superman with all the goodness and virtue of the 1948 TV Version. Soon to be an American Icon.

Of course it would be a lot easier if our new real superman had the same lineage as the fictionalized version from the previous lore that has already been built about him since 1948 and back further with the Comic Strips. In other words, the human race would then be able to concentrate on the inessentials and we would expect an obsession like the new visitor was an A-list celebrity-style.

Since the lineage would be the same hopefully, we would not have to find out who Kal-El really is. And of course it would not be long before we were concerned about who he’s dating. Would it be the latest member of the Lane family? Maybe! Maybe Not! What a great idea!

Would you not think that in America, even before he did any good, he would end up like any other celebrity. He would be special for sure and so there would be the raving super-fans who would follow

his every move, but he really would have no contact to most people during his normal run of the mill day if he has any.

Of course if he lived in a Gotham City like NY or Chicago or LA, he would have a local fan base but if his alter ego were necessary, he might choose a Clark Kent-like persona in a media job. Then, when six months or so pass from his arrival, and maybe sooner. He could get on with the helping of the people on Planet Earth. I can't wait.

What we would love to see from all this is the embodiment of a spirit whose very being exudes the notions of a fighter for our planet or at least for America. What I see is a never-ending battle for truth, justice and the American way. Amen!

Let's not dwell on this negative thought but let's consider it. Superman might not be as happy in real earth in 2022 as he was in black & white TV earth in 1948. Some of us who have been around since 1948 or so, have similar misgivings about the condition of our condition as a country and as a world.

So, we would have to give S-man his own opportunity to think this through. He would need a few extra super powers to help us through the problems of today but let's face it. If anybody can handle the mission, it is Superman.

I suspect that the Man of Steel would not think it was very cool to hate your country. As he learned the Constitution, clearly even Superman would be impressed with the Founders' and Framers' work and while reading it in the library, he might break silence and be scolded by the librarian. Well, he would probably say, "Nice Job Guys" after his first look at the Framers' work.

In modern times, we know for some, it has become very cool to cast hate on America. I don't think Superman would go along with that just to get along. We see that organizations have emerged that feel emboldened to support those who despise our country.

We do not have to travel far to a media outlet showing the disdain for America especially those catering to athletes such as sports brand Nike and or of course Mr. "Take a Knee," Colin Kaepernick. I suspect Superman would ask, "Why is that necessary?" We know that he can help us all fix it.

Of course we who know the story also know that Superman was not created as a superhero. He was fashioned as the best of the best and he served as an allegory for the best that America could be. Every boy and every man, as he fictionally walked among us, would be honored to be compared positively with Superman. He still is a super hero worth getting a tingling feeling about.

And so, even if the new Superman eventually realizes this is not his fictionalized father Jonathan's America, the well-wishers of life would want him to serve as an inspiration to the country that he was created to represent—perhaps as far back as 1948.

Superman, like God, in many ways, would be inspired and motivated to make things better such as in the fashion of his positive image of life.

That is why the black/white motto of Superman and Clark Kent from 1948 “Truth, Justice, and the American Way. Is just as necessary today in America as it was with George Reeves in 1948.

Let us all hope that the spirit of any new Superman who visits us permanently as a real live being will guide America as it forages through these tough times and that America, with the help of the spirit of Superman and all superheroes, will be able to come out the other side and regain the strength to live long and prosper.

And, yes, Superman, you will quickly know that WOKE is a bad idea. Just sayin! Most Americans would be quite pleased going back to what began as a fictionalized motto fostering “Truth, Justice & the American Way.” I know I, for one. can't wait. Can you imagine the possibilities?

I am not the only one who feels this way about Superman. Here is a sample of another human and his admiration for Superman and his hope for a return to planet earth in a real way.

I found a little something on the Internet written by Andy Hall, a self-proclaimed lifetime Superman Fan. Andy makes sense

<https://www.quora.com/What-would-happen-if-Superman-were-actually-real>.

Here are Andy's words:

### **Lifelong Superman Fan**

What would happen if Superman were actually real?

As a Superman fan ..I've often wished this to happen.

More than anything in my life, even for personal gain or anything like that. The want for Superman to be actually real.

All-Star Superman ...the best Superman story to ever be told , poses a question like this ...Superman is dying ..and he needed to know ...what would happen to the world without a Superman. He helps create an Earth ...that he can view ...in a pocket dimension, What happens is , the IDEA of Superman exists!

We're led to believe by the story telling of Grant Morrison, that Superman is viewing a world like ours. Superman gets made by his creators in the realm of fiction , like he has in our real life. And that's ok for Clark. Its ok that the IDEA of him is even in this world.

So in a sense , really Superman as the idea , is real.

The man? The Legend , Clark Kent, the last son of Krypton,  
KAL-EL

If he was real on this world. ALL that we know the GOODNESS of Superman to be. WHO HE IS at his core. IF ALL THAT existed in the real world ...a guy who was raised by TRUE and GOOD parents. If that was to happen today? or would he have arrived like when he was created?

So I wonder then ...ok ...in the 80's he was introduced again as a guy that saved a Spacecraft ..ok...we just recently in the last few years had a Space Shuttle disaster. Let's say THAT's the moment ...2003 Columbia tragedy. THAT'S the moment that Clark Kent chooses to reveal himself to the world as someone that's there to help us , as a friend to mankind.



Well that tragedy doesn't happen.

Those people are saved.

Why? It's Superman that's why.

When the term with absolute power came to be the WHOLE quote was this ..and it was from 1883

"Power tends to corrupt, and absolute power corrupts absolutely. Great men are almost always bad men."

'Almost always'

Now imagine ...that this person who came up with this ...knew about Superman? Would he still think that?

HOW we know Superman to be.

'He's just a regular guy with the BEST Super powers'

He's not Dr. Manhattan

He's not a kid that turns evil , he's not General Zod.

He's not Brightburn.

Superman is Superman.

The answer is though ..even Superman said it himself.

'The Perfect Earth doesn't NEED a Superman'

And that's the Modern version of Superman ..telling Superman who was created in Action Comics #01

So ..I don't think the perfect world would exist.

But it would be a BETTER world I think.

Because that's just who I know Superman to be.

**Andy Hall**



## Chapter 4 “The Land of the Free and the Home of the Brave”

Even without a fictional Superman to inspire our country, our Founders and the Framers were exceptional people. Can you imagine how super we would be with a real Superman? The tribute to the American flag by Francis Scott Key is one of those attributes of American that everybody knows and almost everybody loves. Here it is:



On September 14, 1814, Francis Scott Key was inspired to pen a poem which was later set to music. The poem and the song gets you right in your most patriotic heart. It had been received to such

acclaim that in 1931, it became America's National Anthem. What a brilliant tribute to our flag and its beacon for freedom in our land.

The "The Star-Spangled Banner" is a poem, originally titled "The Defence of Fort M'Henry." We all know it was written after Key witnessed the Maryland Fort being bombarded by the British during the War of 1812. Key was inspired by the sight of a lone U.S. flag still flying over Fort McHenry at daybreak, as reflected in the now-famous words of the "Star-Spangled Banner." "And the rocket's red glare, the bombs bursting in air, Gave proof through the night that our flag was still there."



Francis Scott Key Insight for "The Star-Spangled Banner"

Francis Scott Key was born on August 1, 1779, at Terra Rubra, his family's estate in Frederick County (now Carroll County), Maryland. He became a successful lawyer in Maryland and Washington, D.C., and was later appointed U.S. Attorney for the District of Columbia.

On June 18, 1812, America declared war on Great Britain after a series of trade disagreements. In August 1814, British troops invaded Washington, D.C., and burned the White House, Capitol Building and Library of Congress. Their next target was Baltimore.

After one of Key's friends, Dr. William Beanes, was taken prisoner by the British, Key went to Baltimore, located the ship where Beanes was being held and negotiated his release. However, Key and

Beanes weren't allowed to leave until after the British bombardment of Fort McHenry.

Francis Scott Key watched the bombing campaign unfold from aboard a ship located about eight miles away. After a day, the British were unable to destroy the fort and gave up. Key was relieved to see the American flag still flying over Fort McHenry and quickly penned a few lines in tribute to what he had witnessed.

The poem was printed in newspapers and eventually set to the music of a popular English drinking tune called "To Anacreon in Heaven" by composer John Stafford Smith. People began referring to the song as "The Star-Spangled Banner." More and more accolades came its way. In 1916 President Woodrow Wilson announced that it should be played at all official events. It was adopted as the US National Anthem on March 3, 1931.

Francis Scott Key died of pleurisy on January 11, 1843.

## Citation Information Article Title

The history the United States national anthem reflect the country's long struggle with racial, economic and gender inequality?

By [Jefferson Morley](#), July 4, 2013

Summation:

Funny how such an important hymn had such humble beginnings. It is hard to believe but true nonetheless that in just four stanzas, Key extemporaneously wrote "The Defense of Fort M'Henry." The words spread like wildfire throughout the young nation. It became "The Star Spangled Banner" and was soon a national air like "Yankee Doodle" and "Hail Columbia." To repeat, in 1931, Key's song was designated as the National Anthem of the United States of America.



The flag that flew over Fort McHenry in 1814  
(Credit: Smithsonian Institution Archives via [Wikimedia](#))

## Another famous tribute to the flag

On June 14, 2006, the Baltimore Sun hosted a tribute editorial to the US Flag by the Smithsonian that like many other patriotic notions lives on in renown.

by the Washington, D.C. Smithsonian

Well, old girl, it's that time of year again. There'll be bands and parades and fireworks over Fort McHenry to celebrate the 229th anniversary of the Stars and Stripes being chosen as America's flag. And, of course, your particular role in inspiring Francis Scott Key to write the national anthem during the War of 1812.

Despite divisions in the country over the war in Iraq, the American flag has largely been able to escape being caught up in the bitterness, as it was during the Vietnam War. In fact, it could be argued that since 9/11, Old Glory has rarely been more popular, both as a unifying symbol for the country and a fashion statement - copied in all manner of clothing and home accessories with no offense intended or taken

Yet this dearth of flag controversy hasn't cooled the passions of your self-appointed champions in the Senate, who are pressing

for a constitutional amendment that would allow Congress to make flag desecration a federal crime.

Cynics might call this a political stunt to score points for patriotism. But the politicians are trying to appeal to veterans and other Americans genuinely appalled at even the thought of disrespect to successors of your precious, tattered self.

What they don't understand is the enormous compliment paid to the flag by those who down through history have used it in gestures of protest - Southern rebels during the Civil War, suffragists at the turn of the century, Ku Klux Klan members picketing the Coolidge White House, civil rights demonstrators during the 1960s and, of course, opponents of the Vietnam War. Protesters choose to use - or misuse - the flag because they want to provoke outrage.

The Supreme Court ruled in 1989 that flag burning and similar gestures qualify as constitutionally protected free speech. That's why two-thirds of Congress and the legislatures of three-fourths of the states would have to amend the Constitution to do away with that right. But limiting rights is anathema to the ideals celebrated in Flag Day tributes to the banner that waves over the land of the free and home of the brave.

Supporters of the flag protection amendment have repeatedly prevailed in the House but never before in the Senate. As a fitting tribute to your grand old self, senators ought to reject the amendment again.

Key had become famous almost by accident. He wrote the "Star Spangled Banner" in September 1814 and it became immediately popular.

There is a lot of folklore around the battle of Fort McHenry and Francis Scott Key's composition of what was to become the US National Anthem. Some say the whole experience was based on happenstance. When he wrote the poem, Key like most Americans at the time was caught up, whether he wanted to or not, in the War of 1812. He had been a successful 35-year old lawyer and of course he was an amateur aspiring poet.

He witnessed the bombardment of Fort McHenry from an American ship that was anchored about eight miles away in the Patapsco River. Key was a native of the State of Maryland during the war of 1812, As a Maryland native, his law practice was situated in the District of Columbia.

Circumstances brought Fort McHenry and Francis Scott Key together. The battles of the War of 1812 were raging in Baltimore Harbor close to Washington DC. Fort McHenry was positioned to defend the strategic port city of Baltimore.

It is also just shy of 40 miles from our Nation's Capitol. Also. The 25-hour onslaught of Fort McHenry had major importance in the war as the failed bombardment of Fort McHenry forced the British to abandon their land assault on the crucial port city of Baltimore.

This strategic failure forced British General Brooke to abandon the land assault on Baltimore. When the assault got no place, the British set sail for New Orleans. Let me repeat again for effect that American Lawyer Francis Scott Key, who one of the major myths surrounding the battle was that he was being held on a British warship for a prisoner negotiation during the frightening siege. Another myth was that he had feared after the bombardment that the fort had succumbed to the British. The facts tell us that Key was on an American Truce Ship.

Here is what happened. Beginning at 6:00 a.m. on September 13, 1814, British warships under the command of Vice Admiral Alexander Cochrane continuously bombarded Fort McHenry for every bit of a full 25 hours. The bombardment failed and this became a major turning point in the War of 1812, leading both sides to reach a peace agreement later in the year.

Francis Scott Key was as surprised as anybody that the US pulled out a victory. The United States victory involved the American forces resisting the dramatic British bombardment of Fort McHenry and proved they could stand up to a great world power. The exploding shells and rocket fire from British warships inspired Francis Scott Key to pen the lyrics to the Star-Spangled Banner.



Seeing no way to penetrate American defenses, the British withdrew their troops and gave up their Chesapeake Campaign.

Key was aboard his own American truce ship during the battle.

To reiterate, Francis Scott Key and a fellow lawyer John S. Skinner, who served as the U.S. Agent for Prisoners of War, sailed from Baltimore on September 5, 1814 on an American truce ship. They headed down the Patapsco River in the hope of meeting the British fleet somewhere in the Chesapeake Bay. Their mission was peace and mercy. The objective was to negotiate the release of the elderly Dr. William Beanes, a civilian non-combatant who had been taken prisoner by the British as they departed Washington, DC after burning the White House, the Capitol, and other government buildings in revenge for the U.S. burning of York (current day Toronto) in April 1813.

Key is reported to have been a very persuasive addition to the negotiating team because of his close family ties to both the United States and England. His father served in the Continental Army; whereas his uncle remained a British loyalist during the Revolution. Key's mission was a success. The doctor was released

During their negotiations, then after the release of the doctor, Key and Beanes changed ships. They were moved from the H.M.S. Tonnant, where they had negotiated with British Admiral Cochrane, to the H.M.S. Surprise and finally back to their own American truce ship. In all this history, the exact name of this ship has defied generations of researchers.

During the harrowing 25-hour bombardment, their American truce ship was not in any action. In fact, it was tethered to a British vessel (one not involved in the fighting) and placed under guard in order to prevent Key and his companions from revealing to Baltimore's defenders any attack plans that they may have overheard in their negotiations,

The estimates are that Key observed the action at Fort McHenry from some six to eight miles away. The Fort did its job by guarding against certain American defeat by protecting the entrance to Baltimore's harbor. Superior British weapons pounded the fort from

newly designed bomb ships anchored safely out of range of the fort's own guns. Nonetheless it did not work.

When Key woke up after a thundering and thumping evening on the morning of September 14, 1814, he was amazed as he peered through the lens of his spyglass to see his nation's 15-star, 15-stripe flag waving defiantly over the fort. He was elated and relieved. He was certain that God had intervened. It took two more days for the British to depart, at which time, they would release him and his compatriots.

So, ask yourself what would a patriotic poet do when stuck with nothing to do and having witnessed a momentous event? He wrote a poem which we all know as the lyrics of a song to a well-known melody that he knew well.

In context

Initially, the British strategy during the War of 1812 had been defensive. The British were more concerned with defeating Napoleon in Europe than fighting a minor war with the United States. This changed on April 6, 1814, with the defeat and abdication of Napoleon, which freed up veteran troops for a more aggressive strategy. Major General Robert Ross was sent to command all British forces on the East Coast of the United States, with Vice Admiral Alexander Cochrane leading a fleet of warships.

Encouraged by their victory at Bladensburg on August 24, 1814, and the subsequent burning of Washington, D.C., the British turned north, intent on capturing the major port city of Baltimore, Maryland. Militarily, Baltimore was a far more important city than Washington because of its thriving port and strategic location.

The British hoped the loss of both Washington and Baltimore would cripple the American war effort and force peace. However, the citizens and militia of Baltimore had been preparing for such an assault for more than a year. The imposing Fort McHenry, at the mouth of the inner harbor, provided the linchpin for the American defenses.

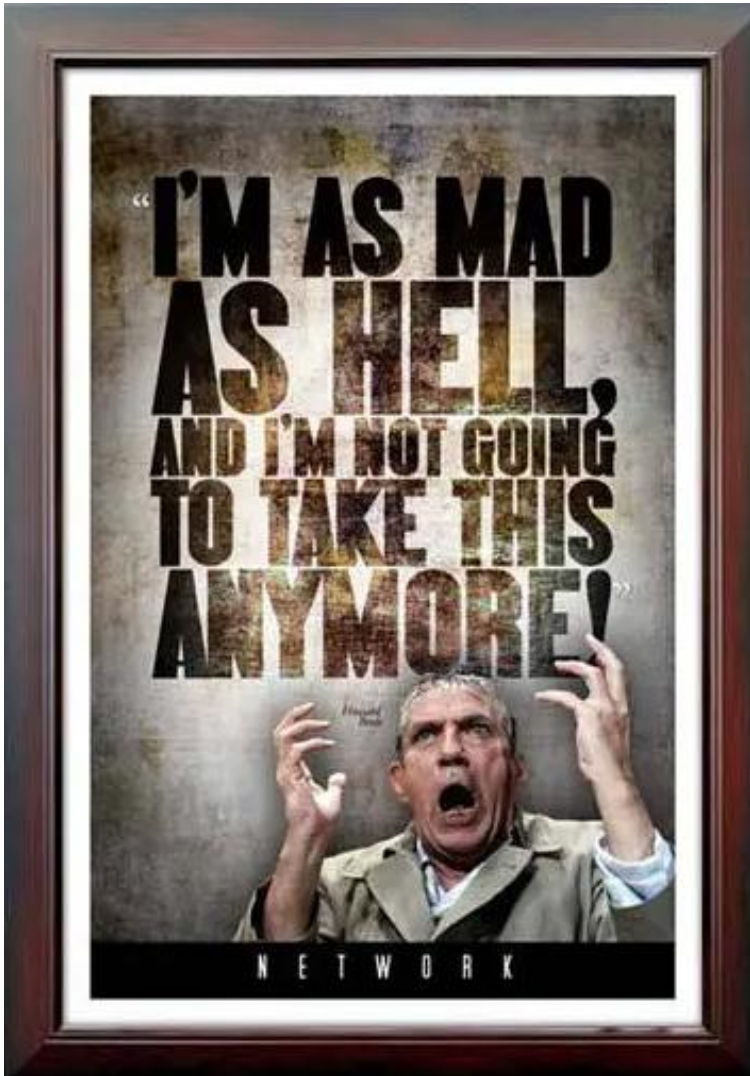
The US Flag stood the assault and Americans are forever free.





## Part II: Why Book Is Necessary Today?

### Chapter 5 Are You Mad as Hell About Your Government!



#### I Am Mad as Hell!

Do you remember back in November 1976 when Howard Beale, as played by Peter Finch, the long-time anchor in the movie “Network News,” gets the bad news that eventually causes him to utter one of

the most famous movie lines of all time? Beale gets fired and is given two weeks. The long-time anchor has a very poor reaction to this personal news and he cannot control himself during the next broadcast. He "goes off the deep end."

He promises to commit suicide on the air. The company immediately fires him—no second chances for a repeat performance. Beale is devastated and remorseful. He begs for the opportunity to say good-bye to his fans with dignity, and he is given his last opportunity ever for air time so that he can say his good-by's respectfully and also apologize. Nobody expects it to happen but Beale gets his chance, and it is billed as a last chance.

Despite his promises, once on the air, Beale is overwhelmed by his circumstance. He goes into another diatribe starting off with a rant claiming that "Life is bullshit." He is so passionate that his ratings spike as he persuades his viewers to shout out of their windows: "I'm as mad as hell, and I'm not going to take this anymore!" Like the shot at Lexington and Concord, this is the line heard 'round the world.

Well, my fellow Americans, I bet you saw this coming, and I am going to deliver it as passionately in words as I can: "I am mad as hell, and I am not going to take this anymore." I bet you are too. Let me remind you of why you are upset.

If you read the Preface, you may find this redundant but many do not believe that America suffers so please hear it again. Taxes are too high, elected officials are out of touch, government is too big, spending is out of control, the Obamacare program has been a train wreck from its inception and it still is; and heroes are dying in the VA system,

I don't have to tell you things are bad. Everybody knows things are bad. We can feel it in our bones, WOKEISM and the cancel culture permeate everything. It's a depression. Everybody's out of work or scared of losing their job. The dollar buys a nickel's worth, banks are going bust, shopkeepers keep a gun under the counter." And suddenly everyone in New York City is at his or her window, saying the same thing according to Howard Beale's prescription—and with due cause.

The people see the federal government including the president and the Speaker of the House as incompetent. We have no voice in government; too many people are too lazy to hold government accountable, and too many of our finest are on the take. China is paying them all they can gorge. Only you and I can bring the country back to being OK, but not by sitting on our duffs.

Our country run by this government is a train wreck and Hillary Clinton, and Bernie Sanders promise every election to keep the train derailed for another eight years. They love how things are. Joe Biden is two years into eight of the worst years of any president.

Corporate leaches and Big Tech Oligarchs have infiltrated our government. We have record unemployment; illegal aliens are smiling as they cross rivers right in front of Border Control Agents. They take American jobs and it is expected; we have an unsustainable status quo with special interests having priority over the people's interests.

When we look to the future we see a public education system that creates more dummies. These dummies are so dummm that they don't seem to mind being called dummmies. Scrooge would even come up with a more devastating term than "Bah Humbug." It's that bad! Can't you feel it?

We have the poorest economy since the depression, more broke people because of food inflation and high gas prices; excessive welfare and income redistribution, institutionalized lying, a corrupt press carrying water for government bull....; a debt large enough to kill America, huge student debt stopping graduate's success, tyranny v. democracy, government lawlessness, freedom and liberty in jeopardy, American stagnation, and a big loss of American world prestige.

Why we do not know about this is because we have the most corrupt press since Gutenberg invented the printing press and they work hard to propogandize all aspects of American life while being surrogates of the liberal progressive wing of the Marxist / Communist oriented new Democratic Party.

Our big government with Biden in control has become such a problem that it can never again be the solution. Our finest hope, our

youth; go through colleges in huge numbers to become unemployed and sacked with debt.

Their out of touch professors have convinced them that this is the norm but we know the American Dream is supposed to be the norm. Today's millennials do not believe in the American Dream or any dreams because their elitist professors hate America.

The student loan burden prevents borrowers from buying homes, cars, and having a family. As many as 45 million student loan borrowers owing over \$1.7 Trillion are too broke to engage in life. College loans, instead of lifting people to the top, have created a new race to the bottom,

On the International stage, thanks to our elected government, America is now known as a bad actor. Biden can't do anything right and does not seem to care. His worldwide demise began in Afghanistan when the President left more than \$85 billion in Arms at Bagram Air Force Base, which the Chinese basically gobbled up.

Then, then he caused 13 Americans to be killed in a sham pullout from the country. Eleven Marines, one Navy corpsman and one soldier were "killed as the result of an enemy attack while supporting non-combatant evacuation operations," according to a Saturday press release from the Department of Defense, which released the names of the U.S. troops.

Until this hapless president's botched withdrawal, "not one— not a single American military service member had died in Afghanistan in the past 18 months. Then came the day – August 26<sup>th</sup> when 13 were killed in a Suicide bombing attack.

Nobody gives the US standing ovations anymore. Nobody asks us for curtain calls. Our leaders turn their backs on our friends and seem to pay homage to our enemies. Nightclubs in Orlando create major carnage while, so as not to offend the new religion of acceptability in the US, the government blames Christians and guns rather for the work of an ISIS terrorist, rather than the hate mongering perpetrators of the atrocity.



Smaller and weaker countries such as Russia, Iran, and North Korea push US around and laugh at US, and our only response is to see if somehow we may have offended them.

For me, these are the worst days of America that I have ever witnessed, and the leadership and our government seems to be OK with being mediocre, instead of being outstanding. Our government has trained us not to fight the bad guys.

If you have been paying attention, and I sure hope you have been as it is a civic duty, you know that there are even more issues than the exhaustive list we just walked through. Isn't that a shame on US? I think that is why you bought this book. Thank you very much.

We are on the same side, and together we can all help. We first must understand what is going on and we then must understand our rights. Even before you and I and everybody else are on board, we must start the first wave of solutions by following Howard Beale's instructions by opening our windows all the way and shouting as loud as we can so all of the government perpetrators in Washington can hear us well: "I am mad as hell, and I am not going to take this anymore."

Then, make sure that you talk to all of the other dummies out there that you know—people like you and I and others, and let's help them know that unless we all fully engage, in America, when we wake up from our deep fog and funk, there may be no America left for our progeny. We will have blown it for sure if that is permitted to happen.

## **America is a Representative Democracy?**

When we think of the very important notion that "America is a representative democracy, aka a Republic, watching the clowns who occupy our central government, it is a sane question to ask if this is really true. The song, "Is that all there is?" comes to mind today. We are nothing like our parents and nothing like our founders. We should all be ashamed but then again shame is no longer permitted.

A representative democracy is the foundation of America. However, what makes America, America is that we are also a Republic, the finest form of government ever brought forth from mankind.

We also have a set of laws, beginning with our Constitution that govern all politicians in perpetuity—as long as we hold the government accountable for enforcing them properly.

The big laws like the Constitution are not so that the government can hurt us or impose its will upon US. Not hardly! Our country was founded by some very smart people and they knew that without constraints on any government gone wild, such as a great body of law known as the Constitution, politicians and others in government would feel they had a right to deny US our liberty and freedom. They are trying real hard today to kill America so you are reading this book none too soon.

If you could figure any way to put a stranglehold on corrupt politicians, right now or in the future, would you not do it? The founders of America put such a stranglehold on all political agents of the future when it wrote and adopted the Constitution, the greatest body of law ever written in any civilization.

Of course, if we the people do not know what is written in the Constitution, it can't help us much. Can it? So, it is time to stop being dummmies and political sport for the elite. It is time to rule America as our birthright as citizens of this great country commands US. Let somebody else eat cake!

And, so, my fellow Americans, that is the number one reason that in order to form a more perfect union of the thirteen colonies / states, and with more states expected at the Founding and the Framing , our forefathers built the finest Constitution ever fashioned by a pen in human hands. Our President has a pen and a phone but he can't make it work the magic of the founders. Apparently, he is not interested in trying to do so anyway! Joe Biden will be held accountable but historians for failing America and all Americans

The Bible, from the hand of God, may be the greatest story ever told in the greatest book ever written, but the Constitution is as good as it gets for the goodness of man, written by the hands of our first patriots, and surely this was with the guidance of God.

In this day and age, there are everyday attempts by the government to undermine our lasting Republic, which is an almost pure constitutional representative democracy. The attacks most often come from the left side of the political spectrum. Just today the Congress is murmuring the notion of packing the Supreme Court as a means of cheating on the natural happening of the majority party.

Packing the court is not a new notion but it is a bad notion for a Democracy. In the 1937 attempt by Roosevelt to pack the Supreme Court, the US still had pretty strong resistance to authoritarianism. Back then, the Democrats held an overwhelming 74-17 margin over the GOP in the Senate, a significantly greater margin than today's one vote margin for sure. However, the legislative branch was not interested in ripping up the Constitution as the Democrats are today.

In fact, there was so much outrage at FDR's power grab that the proposal was eventually dropped. America narrowly avoided becoming an authoritarian state. The checks and balances put in the Constitution held up. Patriots are hoping that the Democrats attempt to exert authoritarian rule today is similarly thwarted.

Today we see renewed calls for court packing. I would hope that the proponents of this scheme understood more about the 1937 attempt at court packing, as well as the effects of court packing in various banana republics, they would reject this idea. At least they would know how it is not a panacea.

PS. It is very important to distinguish between court packing and court enlargement. There was a legitimate court enlargement with the 22nd amendment to the Constitution. This limited the president to two terms but the current occupant of the presidency was exempted. I don't have strong views either way on legitimate proposals for court enlargement, but allowing the same president who signed a court enlargement bill to also engage in court packing would be a mistake of epic proportions. Checks and balances are an essential tool for preventing authoritarianism.

Growing up we often heard warnings about Communism and Marxism. Today there is a leaning towards these ideologies like never before. The ideology of the progressive left favors Marxism and its simpler forms of socialism and communism.

Since the American public as a rule do not vote for socialists, communists, or Marxists, these are things that nobody other than a crooked politician should want. If we are unaware of this in today's government, it is time we all paid more attention. A review of Civics would help all Americans today. No politician wanting to be elected would ever admit they are more communist than American. Yet, as much as it pains me to tell you, they are doing that today and too many Americans are falling for their words.

These overtures, which demean the Constitution, the fabric of our democracy, originate from corrupt politicians, and there are more and more in modern times. They have been caught up in the leftist movement, which would like to end capitalism, and bring on a socialist order to replace the American Dream, and all the dreams of We The People!

One midnight, I asked myself one of those haunting questions: "Isn't it about time that we real Americans actually had some real "representation" from the so-called representatives in our so-called representative government? I said to myself: "Yes it is!" It doesn't have to be a dream. If we believe, it can easily again be made a reality.

The way it now works provides far too much separation between US, the electors, and them, the elected officials who coordinate our pooled resources for the alleged benefit of "everyone." But who is everyone? And who takes credit for everything?

Do our representatives in the second decade of the twenty-first century have a genuinely compelling concern for the people and our government or is this simply a Nirvana, which in Buddhism is its final goal—a transcendent state in which there is neither suffering, desire, nor sense of self, and the subject is released from the effects of karma and the cycle of death and rebirth. If not Nirvana, perhaps it is a Disney-like Utopian myth perpetrated on US by these same "benevolent politicians?" Do any of US think they care?

I propose the latter. Our government is wholly unaccountable to We the People. Today, our government rejects the fundamental principles of our founding and has no real legitimacy the further it drifts from the precepts of the Constitution.

The US was not designed this way. It was designed by a group of artisans to not only represent their artistic touch, but to be held as the creed of the people, for the people, and by the people, forever. What thinking human being blessed to be part of America, could ask for anything more?

If you think that life, freedom, liberty, and the ability to pursue your own happiness are simple notions, and givens in any civilization, get out your thinking pad, and think again. Why do people from all over the world crash our gates just to get in? Look at the crowds today rushing into our country illegally just to live in America.

Which would you first give up? Your freedom, your life, your liberty, or your ability to do what you need to be happy? Who could ask for anything more than being an American? But, if Americans do not care about it, maybe it cannot last.

If this design, which the founders labored to create for America was so great, you might ask, why is it that our current lawmakers ignore it? They have no trouble going with the flow and committing US to years of debt without even taking the time to read the debt-ridden legislation for which they vote.

Even worse, its members, our alleged civil servants, are able to get away without doing their jobs, while collecting more and more remuneration for the act of hurting the American people at large.

The true answer to that question is very unfortunate for Americans. There is tacit collaboration in undermining the principles of our Democratic Republic by our supposed representatives, their supporters, the special interests, and their corporate interests.

We the people now come last. They think we are not paying attention. Maybe we have not been paying enough attention but don't you agree that is about to end. Pay attention is about to become the motto of the free!

Perhaps too many of US, until things got this bad, have been hoping George would do it! Well, George Washington, one of our finest patriots is long gone, and unless you know of a recent George with the time, it is up to US to do it.

And, by the way, the two George Bush's did not get it done either. But, the country drama with all Americans being the least we can be, had not yet become a cliff hanger event, either. Maybe the Bushes were not so bad after all. They could have done more but they did not cause today's morose about life in America. BHO can step up to the plate and claim that all for himself. Joe Biden is the worst. He is trying very hard to pull our country over a cliff to end it for good. Many hope that if he succeeds, that he should go over the cliff at the same time, and he should never reappear.

Can it be that too many of US and too many of our friends have been constitutional dummies for too long? Perhaps this book and your exhortations to all your friends will help many Americans awaken to what happens in a country in which government, rather than the people, has the stronger hand.

By the way, as much as they could have helped and did not do such a good job; the Bushes did not cause this problem. It rests on the shoulders of BHO and it is supported by the shoulders of JRB. Whereas few wanted to blame BHO for the demise of the country even though he seemed so happy screwing us all at the time, more and more American see right through Joe Biden's policies and a preponderance of Americans blame him for our problems and worse than that, we see Biden as the clear reason for no solutions.

## Chapter 6 Are Americans Simply Dummm Suckers?



If America is not first, then Whom?

### Americans must not be chumps

Our representatives are in office far too long and they gain relationships with others in the ruling class. They begin to think they belong in Washington, where their social life exists, not their home territories. They begin to like the trappings of Washington more than being with their loved ones back in their home states.

Unfortunately for all Americans, the new “important” relationships trump the notion of fair representation for the people (US) from back home. When they take their oaths of office and they promise to represent US, most are sincere at the time—at least at the beginning of their terms.

Then, they come to Washington and experience the trappings and the temptations. And, because humans are only human, way too many of our finest stray from the mark and contribute to the re-creation of a country of which few thinking Americans are proud today.

Mr. Smith Goes To Washington is a 1939 Film that remains a powerful and damning statement about political corruption. It is what it is.

Mr. Smith Goes to Washington tells a sad story about everything wrong with American government. All Politicians should have coerced attendance at a showing at least once a month to remind them of their oaths and duties.

The content of the film and its reception in Washington and the greater world say a lot about how media can bring light to uncomfortable truths – and what people do when faced with them. In the film's most famous sequence, Smith holds the floor in the senate (filibuster), hoping to make his case to the people of his state and his fellow senators that decency should prevail. In this film it does prevail.

Think about our forefathers, especially George Washington, who guided our troops in the revolution against England's tyranny. Think about honest Abe Lincoln, who freed the slaves and saved the union. They would weep to see what their political successors have done to our nation.

So, our fair haired representatives (figure of speech) choose to represent themselves and their special interests, rather than the territories that sent them to the Congress of the USA to represent the people. Perhaps a dose of Lincoln's "honesty," is all that is needed to save the day. Wouldn't that be nice?

Our "honorable," do not even seem to care for our well-being. They care for their leadership positions, which make them big shots, and they care for themselves for sure. Unfortunately, they just can't get it into their heads that we the people are the reason they are in their political positions in the first place. We are their employers, and they serve at our pleasure. The more we all understand that the tighter the reins can be on errant politicians, the more the people will be in charge.

Then again, maybe a lot of the problem is our fault since we do not check them out well enough before we slam them into office. To make it simple to understand this notion—if there is a rotten piece of fish in the market and we select it for dinner, whose fault is it when



it doesn't taste good and our guests get sick? So, when we pick a rotten person to represent US—whose fault is that? You see, we do not have to be dummmies. We simply too often choose to be.

It does not matter whether the government is controlled by Democrats or Republicans. The people are always short changed on the notion of representation and well, honesty! When has a representative run effectively on honesty? Is that because we do not care about honesty or we know they are kidding. Either way it is our fault.

Somebody once said that if you like your honesty, you will be able to keep it and it should save you about \$2500.00 per year. But I jest, yet my jest is serious.

OK, nobody said that but some president at some time in the last four years told Americans that they could keep their doctors, their health policies, and they would save \$2500.00 to boot. His name was Barack Obama and the speech was about Obamacare. It was a lie.

My objective in this book is not to have you know who said that or to get you upset whether he or she did or did not. I just want you to think about what the founders promised and what American government has been delivering to the people before the liars took charge. There is a chasm.

My objective is to help smarten you up so that guys like that, whether they are the president or not, do not get to treat you like a chump.

I have the ability to imitate people's speech. In my home town, for example, I can imitate the voice of a late Congressman, Daniel J. Flood, as if he were in the room when you heard the words. It is a gift. I can also imitate WC Fields, though not as well—but not too badly.

## **Can W. C. Fields help?**

Some Americans know that WC Fields was the essence of Americana in his day. He found the nuances and he got a lot of laughs by pointing them out while using just a smidge of hyperbole.

Fields counted on the weak and the strong alike to understand his missives, and he fired them off in his raspy voice to much acclaim.

Fields was into everybody's head, like it or not, strong willed-or not. He was not just a writer and an actor; he was also a psychologist without a degree. I would argue that only WC Fields can explain why America is falling apart today. However, I would agree to give Rod Serling his due that this may just be a bad Twilight Zone episode.

Fields did not think much of the human character of his day and age, and I suspect that he would think less of humans in our time. How about the title of one of his films? Does it not explain his perspective about how non-thinking, humans, aka, dummmies, can be exploited when they choose to not pay attention?

I would ask you all to consider his movie, "*Never Give a Sucker an Even Break.*" This is a war-time 1941 Universal Pictures comedy starring the raspy voiced master of comedy himself. WC wrote the original story without taking credit in his own name. His pseudonym for this work was Otis Criblecoblis. This master played himself in the movie. His plot was that he was searching for a chance to promote a surreal screenplay he had written. Ah, Yes!

Fields based this movie on some of his earlier films, such as *Poppy* (1936) and *You Can't Cheat an Honest Man* (1939). It did not take long for the audience to know the poor regard Fields felt for his fellow man.

WC himself would refer to it as understanding the comic importance of human vulnerability. In *Poppy*, for example, he tells his sweet little daughter that "If we should ever separate, my little plum, I want to give you just one bit of fatherly advice: *Never give a sucker an even break!*"

Think about that and ask yourself if you have wondered why some of the political parties out there today may not be giving any of US an even break. Maybe they think we are too weak to demand it?

Knowing that he had hit a chord with his Americana, in the blockbuster film, *You Can't Cheat an Honest Man*, WC lays it on even thicker. He knew that people hated wussies; but he also knew that

many people take on the personality of a wuss, in a moment's notice.

And, so , in this great film extravaganza, with gin breath for sure in every scene, WC tells a customer that his grandfather's last words, "just before they sprung the trap" were, "You can't cheat an honest man; never give a sucker an even break, or smarten up a chump." He could say these seven thousand times in his inimitable voice, and I know I would chuckle each time. But, maybe he was right about US?

Since this is not supposed to be a political book, though we are surely in tough political times, when trust of government is in question, I cannot tell you which of the two major political parties think that Americans have no brains. However, I will tell you that WC Fields would have had no problem identifying the culprits and delivering the goods.

Moreover, he would be pleased to cheat suckers in any way he could; while giving none a break. All chumps of course would remain dumb and gullible and capable of swallowing political propaganda, while still remaining loyal to the party that was inflicting the most harm on them. Fields in many ways behaved as the party, which I shall not mention but they control everything in America today and their guy is president. Fields lied very well in his portrayals. In fact, he literally made prevarication into an art form.

My job in this book is to help all Americans know that it is about time that we all pay attention and that we no longer defer to the judgment of political "friends." Let's stop being suckers and chumps, and throw out the bums that are destroying America, from whichever party they come. We know who they are now let's do what we must.

If we happen to come across an upstanding janitor in a clean building, we would be far better off enticing this fine person into representing our district than listening to the propaganda of the establishment political class. They are destroying America. Their advice is purposely directed to convince US to elect representatives of the worst character. Let's just say no!

When Fields put out this last film, he was 61 years old. Though he was probably tickled that he lasted to 62 years of age, with all the weathering he inflicted on himself over the years, he knew that alcohol and illness had taken their toll. His waist line had grown in size but not by design. He loved a nip way too much. It would do him in and soon.

He was an accomplished juggler in his teens and early days in burlesque. He had real athletic talent, and he had the determination of a poor person, hoping never again to be poor.

At one time, when in his fifties, he went through a period in which he made eight films in the space of two years. Abuse does take its toll. I bring him into this book because Americans are being played for chumps by the political class, and nobody seems to be giving US a break.

Truth and knowledge are our best hope to fight off the promises and lies of the political class. When you see a politician speaking, remember there is only one way to know if he or she is lying: “Are their lips moving?”

Then, of course in today’s day and age, you have the low-information voters – the most gullible citizens, who are so good hearted, they would ask an aggressor if they could hold the nail as it was pounded through their hand on a cross.

They would ask an opposing soccer striker coming towards the ball in a rush to kick it into the goal,” Is this your ball sir? They would be nice rather than take what is theirs. They would not want the striker to miss out on her or his opportunity to score against him or her. Why kick it away to save the team when there is less immediate flack if you just say, “Oh, excuse me, is this your ball?”

That’s just a little too nice. America was not born of niceness. It was built on fairness, goodness, and individual strength. We are not supposed to give politicians an even break, We are supposed to pay attention so our rights are not violated by grabby politicians. If you happen to be in this low information / overly nice category, thank you for visiting this book. I hope that through my writings, I can help you be more like you can be.

You gotta smarten up or we are all toast. Finish this book, please and you will understand how smart you can be and how much power you can wield against those who care nothing about you or me, or America. Always keep your eye on the ball and do not give the ball up to an opponent just because they lie and schmooze you.

Though I enjoy his work, please note that this is not a biography of WC Fields nor is it a book that attempts to hide all of his transgressions or the transgressions of the political class. Beware of false prophets.

In his day, Fields was the master in understanding his times. My goal in bringing him into this discussion as we have already absorbed some excerpts of a former book of mine titled *America 4 Dummmies*, is so that we can cast his knowledge forward to the people of today.

With a not-so-free and very dishonest and corrupt press, the propaganda provided in the mainstream news media of today, would have US all believe in the “*Tooth Fairy*.” Any of US that live by believing their rot, are un-smartened chumps.

Since I too believe in Santa Clause, and have met him once or twice in my life, I will cast aspersions only on the Tooth Fairy. I have never personally met her, though I did find a quarter under my pillow one morning and there was a missing tooth.

Ask the mainstream press about these two fine characters, which make our children very happy. Ask them if they are real or not? If you can get the press to talk to you honestly about Santa or the Tooth Ferry, ask them if they care at all about regular Americans.

Those of US living in the shadow of the post 2008 and 2012 or 2016 or 2020 elections are no longer suffering from a recession or a bad economy. We have been told that we are in a recovery period by a government that will say anything to protect its power. How is the recovery going for you? Did Mr. Biden tell you how he would make it?

We are suffering from no economy, caused by a government that wants to punish anybody or any company that is productive. Those in charge of government now tell US that this is the new normal and

we are just supposed to accept it. I don't accept it and I hope you won't. This is about the worst government I have lived through. But, we still have the right to vote. Please vote.

The Affordable Health Care Act, which cynics either call the Unaffordable Health Care Act, or simply Obamacare (even the President loves the term), is one of those things that most Americans joke about in public but fear in private. Most of US get sick every now and then and we do not want a government bureaucrat deciding whether we get treatment or not.

We may joke about its conception and its most inept rollout, and the miracle of a 7.1 million count by March 31, 2014 when just the day before nobody knew how many had paid. These things are really not funny but our government sees the truth as its mortal enemy.

Some of the most attractive measures of Obamacare include the fact that it permits parents to keep their kids on the dole, since the Obama economy has been so bad, until they are 26. The other great thing people like is that nobody can deny a person with pre-existing conditions.

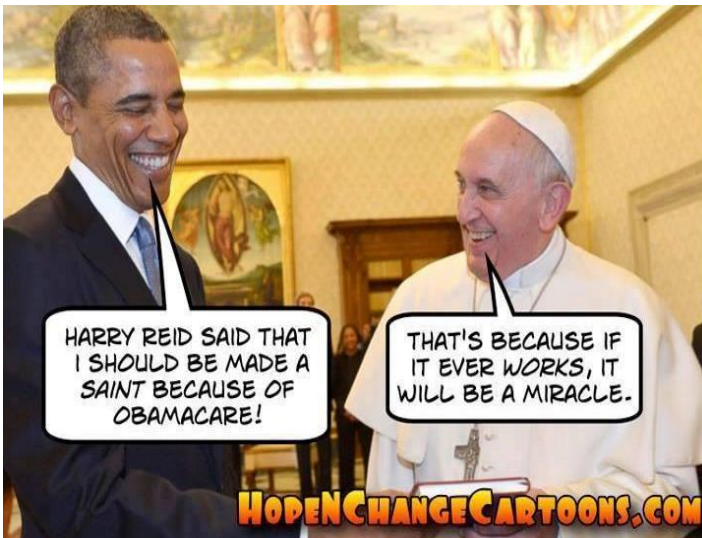
Well, I have bad news about the little lie involved in this story. Just like you can't keep your doctor, your hospital, or your health insurance plan, and you won't save \$2500, despite Obama promises, he was also kidding about the pre-existing thing. Obama said, you can get Obamacare if you have a pre-existing condition. Sorry, he was kidding again. Please forgive him as you always do because he is so good looking.

Once March 31, 2014 came, that was the end. Unless you can postpone your illness until January 2015, and you do not die, you cannot sign up for Obamacare. With 7.1 million signed up and Obama claiming victory, nobody can get insurance again until 2015. I am so sorry the President twice removed did not tell you that, but it is the truth.

Regardless of which party is responsible for the mess, Americans are on edge anticipating that somehow, because there are big problems, we will all get nailed by it in one way or another. Many of US think that we may lose our jobs, lose our ability to work full time, lose our health insurance policies, and not be able to afford the new

government issued policies coming our way. We may get sick and we may die because of Obamacare. Thank God Obama is not under Obamacare so at least he will be available for a eulogy at any of our funerals.

Illegal immigration and amnesty is another of the jokes perpetrated on the American people. In this instance, both the Democrats and the Republicans share the same vision – *to stiff the American people*, and to give priority to illegal foreign nationals rather than American citizens. What happened to America and Americans first? What would WC say about this folks?



Some truths stand forever. Even Obama when he met with Pope Francis could not think of anything positive to say, so he quoted his buddy Harry Reid. We show the bubbled exchange with the Pope below. Pope Francis must have a great sense of humor. Don't we just love his simplicity?

And, so, I decided that this book about America would not be political and it shall not be. It is anti-political. But, we must tell the truth about how things really are—don't you think?

I am a Democrat and have been all my life. But it has been both Democrats and Republicans who have given us this sad state of affairs.

And, so this book is truthful and fact-filled and it will make each political party seem like they, and they alone, along with the two party system—are responsible for the problems that America has been suffering while trying to stay America—and while trying to keep our American way of life.

Because I love America so much, I wrote this book so that I can share my sense of what America really is, and why until the millennials got shut out of the American dream, with no jobs after college, who consequently cannot start families, this was a country that not only promised an American Dream. It delivered.

I hope this book helps to wake up Americans of all ages from the fog that has affected our brains. We have not changed but we have permitted our government to change. Our representatives and our government has changed so much they have forgotten who we are and who we are supposed to be.

Joe Biden may not have forgotten. Those who observe the current president and his natural mean-ness, and natural proclivity for gaffes and his forgetfulness and his tough time reading cue cards without stumbling, suggest that his better years are behind him for sure. Look at his policies.

Americans were once concerned that Mr. Biden was not making his own decisions. Now, based on his observed behavior, many more Americans are concerned that he is making his own decisions. Government itself has grown so big that we the people who own the government according to a deed known as the Constitution, can no longer sort through all the lies and the empty promises. Biden is the best liar who has ever been president. So, we must all help reduce the size of government so that the people can matter again. We get our chances each election cycle.

If all Americans understood America, and were taught to respect America in our schools, instead of blaming America—we would not have to worry about being defeated from within.

In this way, if any American political party comes-by led by Democrats or Republicans, and it wants to change America into a Communist-Russian-like, or Communist-Chinese-like, or Nazi-



German-like country, we will be equipped to fire off a quick *nyet*, or a *mhai*, or simply, a hearty, guttural *nein!*

We can surely add *no-way Jose* for effect if we choose, simply because we are Americans and we are exceptional. What we cannot do is accept and believe the propaganda from the corrupt, socialist progressive Marxist owned press in the US.

America, from its inception, along with mercantilism, has used capitalism to create the strongest country in the world. Those who do not like America have already removed mercantilism from the landscape and now hope to replace capitalism with socialism.

Their replacement scenario is a promise of the best of small “c” communism in our later evolution, or revolution, but they may not permit freedom lovers to live when they gain control, if we are not totally happy with them.

If you believe in any of these socialist philosophies and you also like your freedom, it might be a good time to visit the tombstone makers in your area and pick out a good one. In memoriam! You are gone!



## Part III: Brief History of the USA

### Chapter 7 Introduction to Colonial History



The Colonists in America

#### Americans benefit from our democracy

Our Constitutional Representative Democracy, aka, our Republic comes from the hard fought battles of the Revolutionary War plus the craft of our founders in writing our country's original laws. Everything America was and is—is because of the work of the great men who came before US. We know them as the Founders and the subset of those who worked to create (frame) our great Constitution are known as the Framers.

Most Americans and anybody who has studied American Civics, have a great feel for the notion of representative democracy and the sense that we elect representatives of the community to handle our affairs in the governing of our nation. When we don't cheat, it works out great. Great governments depend on honest people. We Americans also have the privilege of a Constitution which is intended to prevent tyranny by a government gone wild.

One of the first things we learn when we study our government in a subject known as Civics is exactly what we do not get in our

democracy. We do not have a direct democracy and so we do not get to conduct the activities of government ourselves in Washington.

The 300 million or so adult citizens of America do not crowd into the chambers of the central government to propose legislation and then vote on it as a large body. Instead we elect representatives from our community who are of like minds and they do the voting for us. This is called indirect democracy. .

Try to imagine how difficult it would be to squeezing over 300 million people into a room—even a big room—in Washington D.C. to conduct the government’s business, Since that is a physical impossibility, we select representatives among us to get the job of government done. There is one more hitch.

Our democracy is really a Democratic Republic. Oh sure it is a democracy but it has other attributes that make it even better. And so technically, we call it a democratic republic. It may be confusing but that is why we are explaining it right now. We are lucky for sure to use a form of government operating on principles adopted from a republic and a democracy.

We might say that we have a cross between two exceedingly similar systems. Democratic republics function on principles shared by both republics and democracies. In addition to the people having the say, there are certain rules that must be followed. In America, those rules are embedded in a document called Constitution. That’s why the Constitution is so important to the structure and the functioning of our government.

Common definitions of the terms democracy and republic often feature overlapping concerns, suggesting that many democracies function as republics, and many republics operate on democratic principles, as shown by these definitions from the Oxford English Dictionary:

**Republic:** "A state in which supreme power is held by the people and their elected representatives..."[1]

**Democracy:** "A system of government by the whole population or all the eligible members of a state, typically through elected representatives."

Yes, in those definitions it is tough to see the difference. So, let me tell you what makes them different for me. A pure Democracy is run by all the people with understood rules. A Democratic Republic is also called a Constitutional Republic and is run by representatives of the people who are bound by the *law of the land* which is known as The Constitution.

The Constitution is a document which in America holds all the enumerated powers of the national government. Yet, it provides for elasticity in exercising those powers. It also distributes powers between the national government and the state governments. In doing so, the Constitution makes individuals citizens of both their states, such as Pennsylvania and of the nation – the United States of America.

The more times an American citizen is introduced to the notions of democracy, and democratic form of government and a republic and a democratic republican form of government, the more the citizens understand the notion and the easier they can explain the sameness and differences. Some suffice it to say that a Constitutional Republic is a Democracy with a written set of rules or Constitution. If you get that much, you are not far away from full understanding.

## What's Next?

When you go through other sections of this book, your opinion of the purity of the act of representation may become tainted. That is OK. I hope to generate some alarm and a sense of urgency among the readers for we simply may not have much time to get it right. When the country was founded, things were functioning a lot better than they are today. For example, there was not such thing as Critical Race Theory, Cancel Culture, or Wokeness. Would nit not be nice for life to not have such nasty contrivances today.

Something surely went wrong with the intention of representation from the Founding Fathers to what representation means today. Something went way wrong sometime between 1492 and the present day but the evidence suggests that the problem began closer to the year 2000 than to the year 1400. That's not to say that all was hunky-dory in the 1400s and onward.

Let's now take a look how America started to set the initial stage for an explanation. Then, we will take a peek at Colonial times and then the times from our founding.

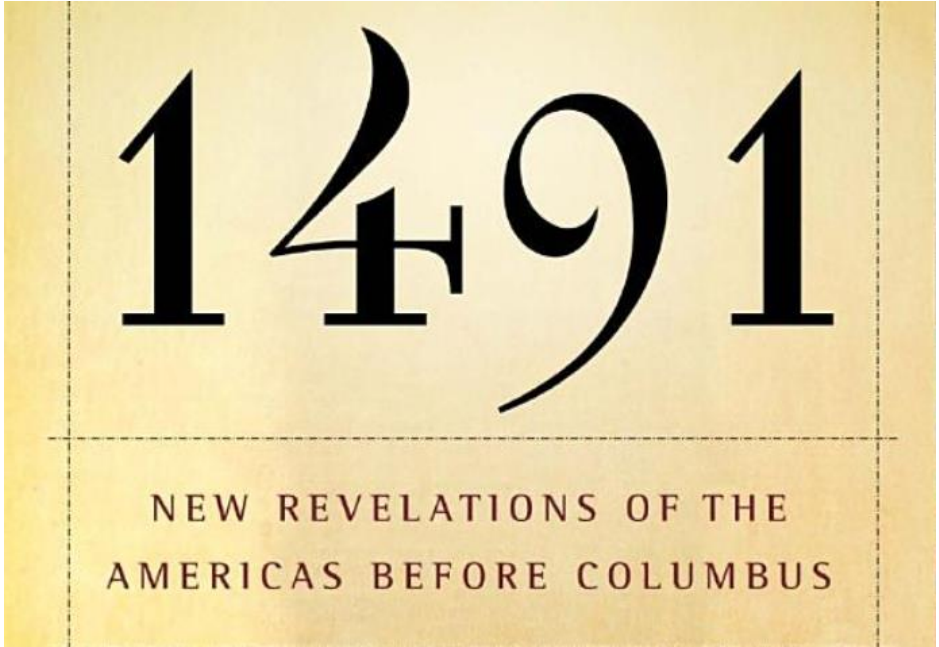
Eventually we will discuss present times and the problems with corrupt representation. Along the way, we will stop several times to examine and discuss the founding documents which define our government.

In later chapters, we will take a hard look at Civics, and we will all get a nice Civics lesson on government choices that the founders made so we can better appreciate our republican form of democracy.

From here we will discuss some of the pitfalls that any government runs into, especially our Constitutional Republic after over 200 years in existence. The Constitution of the United States, went into effect in 1789, created a relatively strong federal republic to replace the relatively weak confederation under the first attempt at a national government with the Articles of Confederation and Perpetual Union ratified in 1781.

We will wrap up the book by discussing our supposedly honorable elected officials and how our understanding of America can help us keep these “honorable” under control to preserve government of the people, for the people, and by the people.

## Chapter 8 America Before Columbus



### Was Columbus the First Man Standing?

When we learned about Columbus in grade school, we also learned a very small amount about America before 1492—before Columbus landed? We learned that our hemisphere had a very sparse population, and that the occupants were mostly nomadic tribes living off the wilderness. We also learned about some more developed cultures in Central and South America.

We keep learning as we study history that things are not always the same as we first understand them. For example, We know now that Columbus was among the last explorers to reach the Americas, not the first. Five hundred years before Columbus, a daring band of Vikings led by Leif Eriksson set foot in North America and established a settlement.

Author Charles C. Mann in his book, “1491” presents convincing evidence that the pre-1492 era in American was not quite so barren and in fact was a lot more sophisticated than most of US have ever imagined.

In his writings, Mann notes that from southern Maine down the East Coast even past Virginia, there was farm after farm—not just a loggers dream wilderness. Most notably, Mann says there were lots of people. Americans would later call these people Indians or Native Americans.

Unfortunately, most of these people met their deaths through pestilence and disease. A lot of people succumbed each year in the tough winters in the North. Thus, when the American settlers came to inhabit the new world, they did not find many people, and they formed their own conclusions.

Mann writes that North America not only had people before Columbus, it was once as populated as Europe in the pre-1492 era. He says it is only in the last few decades that humans have devised the tools to better probe the past to glean this data.

Mann said it is beginning to look like New England could not have been readily colonized any time sooner because it was too densely populated for settlers to assimilate. By the time the Pilgrims came, however, disease had killed off the population. The new immigrants were constantly discovering skeletons as if they had landed in a cemetery.

A book titled the *History of America Before Columbus, According to Documents and Approved Authors Volume I*, compiled by Peter De Roo (1839-1926), was published by Lippincott, Philadelphia in 1900. As a public domain book, it was recently scanned by the Google project and is available to all online. It offers many theories of the time before Columbus.

It opens up our eyes to even more wonders of America and its ancient past. It shows evidence that primeval man may very well have lived on this continent along with fully developed humans. Now, if that is the case, then the notions learned in our early history books that not too much was happening before 1492 is quite suspect.

One thing we do know is that US history books for years began with Leif Ericson, who is believed to have travelled to this land in the year 1000. Rasmus B. Anderson wrote a book, published in 1874, known as: *America Not Discovered by Columbus*. In this book,



Anderson pointed out the accomplishments of the Norsemen and the Vikings for being the first Europeans in America.

We certainly do not know too much about this, regardless since there was little recorded history in those times. But, with today's tools, the theories of how it was in early America, even before anybody "sailed in," are much more plausible.

And so, based on the work of some great people, we now have reason to believe that America (North and South) wasn't exactly a *New World*. Instead; it was a very old one; whose inhabitants had been here for quite a while, and had built a vast infrastructure of cities, orchards, canals and causeways along with gardens, buildings, homes, roads and pathways.

Many in the Mormon Faith still hold on to the belief that two of the lost tribes of Israel found their way to America and were here when the colonists arrived. They viewed the American Indians as having come from one of the two lost tribes of Israel even before Jesus Christ's time.

They see one of the twelve tribes in America and the other lost tribe in Polynesia. There is debate on this even today within the Mormon people. It is within the realm of possibility based on recent work. There is even speculation that St. Thomas the Apostle spent time in America.

No one has seriously suggested that Christ, during his visible mission on earth, ever visited our continent; but America was part of the world, over which He sent his apostles to teach His doctrine of salvation.

The question of His apostles' actual preaching in America has been in discussion for quite some time but most of US, who do not study such matters as a life mission, would naturally be unaware of these efforts. Many of US would discount some of the religious theories as unbelievable without more proof.

Quite interestingly; despite speculation about major populations being in North and South America at the time of Columbus, traces in North America are much rarer. Many of the population groups in

the southern hemisphere built great edifices with grand architectures scattered through the land.

But, in all the rest of America—our America—aside from the miserable huts (tepees etc.) of the nomadic Indians, not a single memorial has been found to give evidence to national history for several centuries past—i.e. pre Columbus.

Additionally, no modern student of American antiquity fails to notice the close and striking resemblances between several leading particulars of Christian faith, morals, and ceremonies and those of the ancient American religions.

And, so, the question remains, “Was America Christianized from Asia?” The legacy surely appears that America has been a Christian nation for a long time. Despite this, I would not expect that even the late Alex Trebek would find that answer for any of US any time soon—unless of course he uses divine guidance.

# Chapter 9 America Post Columbus and Pre-Revolution



## Columbus, Vespucci, de León , & Cabot

After the first voyage of Christopher Columbus in 1492, the Navigator Columbus and his small cast got credit for being the "Old Worlders," who had discovered the "New World." But did Columbus really discover the American mainland? If he did not, is it really such a big deal?

Historians seem to agree that on his first two voyages, Columbus discovered Cuba, Puerto Rico, Jamaica, the Bahamas, and some other islands. It was not until his third try in 1498, that he reached the mainland U.S. Thus, the claim that Amerigo Vespucci, a Spanish seaman, had reached the continent the year before Columbus may very well be valid.

Considering that the U.S. is part of the Americas and not the Columbias, leads one to conclude that the Amerigo Vespucci claim had enough merit when the naming was going on that the Spaniard got to give US his name.

Some historians argue that neither Columbus nor Vespucci discovered America. They say it was Juan Ponce de León who, who

was Puerto Rico's first governor. This is ironic since Columbus is credited with founding Puerto Rico.

Certain historians have de Leon pegged as the first documented European to set foot on mainland American soil when he arrived with an expedition in Florida in 1513. As you know, he is also purported to have discovered the Fountain of Youth, the legendary spring that, so they say, restores the youth of anyone who drinks of its waters. Yet, since de León, is surely in his grave today, the waters, even if helpful, are not eternal.

Reasonable people have concluded that since there may not really be a Fountain of Youth, de León may not have discovered it. But, he surely discovered a nice state with some real nice warm weather on the mainland. Florida of course continues today to be an exceptional vacation spot.

Don't write the name "de León" down on your pad in permanent ink yet as the first guy to walk on the US mainland from the Old World. There are yet other historians who suggest that he was in fact preceded by John Cabot to the US mainland in 1497.

I am so glad that this is not a history book and we are not here to argue these points. One indisputable fact that we can take from this is that neither de León, nor Cabot, nor Columbus nor Vespucci, are at fault for the current failings of the U.S. representative government since they predate even the "Founding Fathers." I am sure they would all be happy getting honorable mention in this book about their roles in the discovery of our great country.

## **The Jamestown Settlement**

The first documented major group of settlers from the Old World arrived on April 26, 1607. After a few weeks, they built the Jamestown Settlement Colony. It was established on the mainland of North America in Virginia. .

The passengers were a group of 104 English men and boys who began the settlement on the banks of Virginia's James River. The fleet consisted of the three ships, named Susan Constant, Discovery, and Godspeed. The captain's name was Christopher Newport. The

ships took off from London and landed after five months in Puerto Rico. Later they took off for the mainland.

The Virginia Company of London sponsored their trip. The company stockholders hoped to make a profit from the resources of the New World. Unfortunately, even though there appeared to be ample time to prepare for the first winter the community suffered terrible hardships from disease and starvation in its early years, but it managed to endure. Thus it became America's first permanent English colony.

Early on the colonists, who were not very good agrarians or hunters received help from the Indian Tribes near the colony. But, the relationship soured and things did not go too well.

Within a year of Jamestown's founding, the Virginia Company brought Polish and German émigrés to help improve the settlement. It was then that the first women were brought to America. It was more than ten years later, in 1619, that the first documented Africans were brought to Jamestown. At the time, there was no formal notion of slavery but slavery did begin in Virginia in 1660.

## The Mayflower and the Pilgrims

The Pilgrims were among the first immigrants to seek freedom in America. In the absence of religious freedom in their native England, the Pilgrims were willing to endure great trials and difficulties in a new land in order to gain the religious freedom they cherished and to raise their children properly.

Though she was not one of the first colonists, Anne Bradstreet was born Anne Dudley, and she lived from 1612 – 1672. She was the first poet and first female writer in the British North American colonies to be published. She emigrated to America in 1630 with her parents. Here is one of her works which captures some of the hope from colonial days. She aptly calls it perspective:

*“If we had no winter, the spring would not be so pleasant: if we do not sometimes taste adversity, prosperity would not be so welcome.”*

Most of us are tuned into the story of the Mayflower and the Pilgrims and the first Thanksgiving. The Mayflower was the ship that carried mostly English Puritans and Separatists, collectively known today as the Pilgrims from England to America. They left from a spot near the Mayflower Steps in Plymouth, England, and landed in Massachusetts, in 1620. There were 102 passengers and a crew of 25–30.

This is one of the big stories of the founding of America over 100 years after Columbus. This voyage is a story of major accomplishments yet it is also a tragic story about deaths and survival as there were no hotels when the Pilgrims came to America. The immigrants had to endure harshest New World winter environment in the Northeastern US. The voyage, as well as the signing of the Mayflower Compact was one of the greatest moments in the story of America.

The Mayflower Compact was the original governing document written by the Separatists on the ship after it landed in Plymouth Rock. As many of US may recall from learning early US history as youngsters, Plymouth Rock is the traditional site of disembarkation of William Bradford and the rest of the Mayflower Pilgrims who founded the Plymouth Colony.

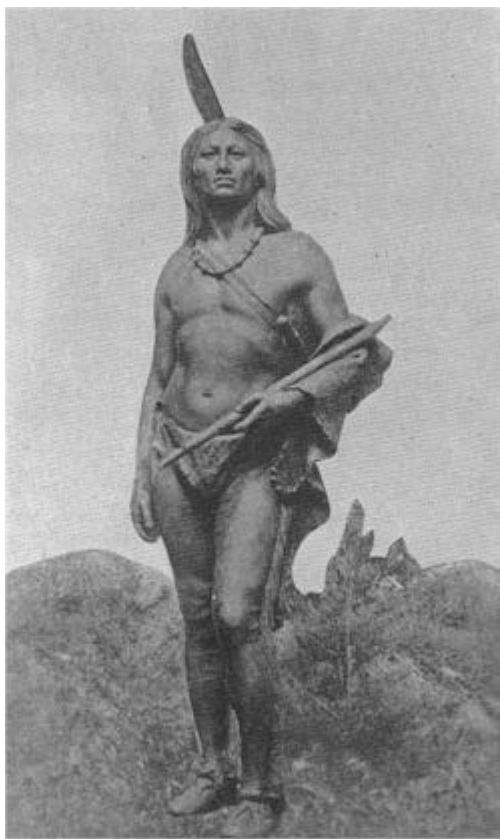
One of the most written about experiences of the Pilgrims was sharing a Thanksgiving harvest with the American Indians. Only 44 of the 102 original passengers survived that winter. It was the kindness of the local Native Americans (Indians) that saved the survivors from a frosty death.

They displayed remarkable courage when the Mayflower sailed back the following spring. Not one Pilgrim was on the ship. None had deserted their New World in Plymouth.

The first governor, who had been elected under the Mayflower Compact did not survive the winter and William Bradford, was elected governor. In May of 1621, he performed the colony's first marriage ceremony. Life was beginning again for the Pilgrims.

By the way, the second marriage soon after was between John Alden and Patricia Mullins, both of whom had come over on the Mayflower. There are many nice stories written about this couple.

## The First Thanksgiving



By the fall of 1621, the Pilgrims were very thankful for their opportunities throughout the year. They had a bountiful harvest and William Bradford, a major hero in this colony, decided they would celebrate with << Chief Ousamequin and about ninety other Indians.

They enjoyed the First American Thanksgiving, which at the time was basically an enactment of the great English tradition of Harvest Festival. They enjoyed a bounty over several days of items such as venison, goose, duck, turkey, fish, and of course, cornbread, a new staple from their first bountiful corn harvest. This

was such a wonderful experience that it was repeated each year at harvest time, and it is still celebrated throughout the US in November each year.

### Some other settlers

Though close to London in the British Isles, the Scotch and Irish did not come to America until the early 1700s, and the Welch did not venture over en masse until near the end of the eighteenth century.

There is also evidence that early expeditions from the British Isles (Wales, etc.) had come to America as early as the Twelfth Century. When the Scotch and Irish came to the New World in the 1700s,

they settled mostly in Pennsylvania before many moved south and west to other colonies. Some went as far north as New Hampshire.

## **A few hundred years before the Revolution**

So that we all have a good idea on how the great American experiment with democracy and constitutional representation began, let's take a look at how the states were organized originally and how they ultimately were able to form a government.

Just like the discovery of America, this is not a fully clean story as historians continue to argue about what is actually what. For example, two of the original states were governed by a notion called self-government but later they were classified along with Massachusetts in a category known as "Corporate."

But, the thirteen colonies, regardless of these classifications, were ultimately the geographical land bodies that became the first United States of America.

The thirteen colonies of England were founded 100 + years after Columbus, with Virginia the first colony in 1607 and Georgia the last in 1733.

Among the things we can be sure about as we look back to these colonial days, nobody from 1607 to 1733 created the current confidence problem in U.S. representative government, and they did not create a huge national debt for US, though our current "honorable representatives" might like to suggest otherwise.

These thirteen colonies were organized into two to three varieties depending on your historical perspective. The original three forms were known as (1) the Charter form, (2) Royal form, and (3) Proprietary form, known as the Corporation (formerly Charter), and the Provincial (formerly either the Royal or Proprietary).

So, the individual colonies, did not each have the same exact form of government but ultimately they all reported to the Crown of England. The Corporation form included Massachusetts, Rhode



Island, and Connecticut, though Rhode Island and Connecticut were also, "self-governing."

The provincial forms included the former proprietary colonies of Maryland, Pennsylvania, and Delaware as well as the former Royal Colonies of Georgia, New Hampshire, New Jersey, New York, North Carolina, South Carolina, and Virginia.

By the way, these colonies stretched from Main to Georgia and that is the whole Eastern US seacoast other than Florida, which for the longest time was under Spanish dominion.

Even during this period, there was confusion and pressure as to which form a particular colony would take. For example, some of the Royal colonies became Proprietary colonies and vice versa and thus the notion of the term Provincial came to describe what today in our politic would be called the flip-flopping al system colonies... though their flipping and flopping was hardly voluntary.

## **The governmental form was similar**

Though not exactly, Most of these colonies had the same form of government consisting of a governor, appointed by the English Crown or by the proprietor(s). Additionally, they each had a council that also was appointed by the Crown. The most important body to the colonists was an assembly, which was known as the house of representatives.

Even while America was attached as a colony of England, this body was elected by the people. These three bodies took on a governmental shape very similar to the king and the two houses of Parliament as existed in England.

Thus, in many ways the government of the colonies resembled the British government, and you can bet that was its intent. Though the English argued that this was a representative democracy, it is easy to see the failings in this notion when the "Crown" appointed the most important ruling bodies - the Council and the Governor.

## The Governor

The Governor directly represented the Crown or the proprietor, who had already paid "allegiance" to the Crown with some type of tribute. Being the proprietor of a colony required a large stipend in cash or in kind.

Now, with that the case, it meant that the Governor did not represent the people though it was his mission. His loyalty was clearly to the Crown and / or the proprietor. To be successful, however, in governing the people, he owed a duty to the people over whom he was placed. Therefore, smart governors knew that it was nice, though not necessary that the people liked him.

As you can easily conclude, the interests of the two parties were so conflicting as to keep the Governor in a constant turmoil. Perhaps this is where the temperament of the politician as we now know them today, would have served best. But, the notion of the politician as we know it, would not arrive for a few more hundred years.

The Governor had immense power in his territory. He could convene, discontinue, postpone or even dissolve the legislature, and he had veto power over all of its would-be laws. He controlled the state militia, and he was the grand Miffintiff, who appointed the important officials, such as judges, justices of the peace, sheriffs, and any others of authority.

The one thing the Governor could not touch however, was the public purse, and this soon became a cause of lament for the British.

Though history suggests there were many kind and benevolent Governors, there were also those who took advantage of the fruits of the spoils system and they even sold some of the offices at their disposal to the rich in the community, thus affecting their own personal purse in a positive way. Unfortunately many of these men, and there were no women at the time, cared little for the welfare of the colonists.

## The Council

Typically there were twelve men in the Council, though in Massachusetts there were twenty-eight. In Maryland, there were only three. Council members needed to possess certain attributes to retain their positions.

For example, they had to be residents of the colony in which they served, and they needed to be men of station and wealth. The Crown or the proprietor appointed the council so the normal conflicts arose and they were settled in the normal way -- in favor of the Crown or the proprietor. Council had three major functions:

- Advise the governor
- Provide the "upper house" of the legislature (Lords)
- Serve as the highest court in that particular colony

In Massachusetts, after 1691, the council was elected by a joint ballot of the legislature, called the General Court. In the other colonies it was by appointment of the Crown or the proprietors.

## **The House of Representatives**

Then, there was the lower house which was elected by the people and whose mission in life was to represent and theoretically support the people. It was the body of the legislature that actually made the laws.

The innate power to make laws is a big deal in any form of government. So, the people did not get to elect the governor, nor the council (also served as judges) but the subjects of the crown actually were permitted their own house of representation to the Colony and ultimately to the Crown through the Council or the Governor.

Now, that's fair, right? Unfortunately, something happened on the way to real fairness. The laws/acts passed by this lower house could be vetoed by whim of the governor, or be set aside by the Crown within a certain time after their passage for any reason whatsoever.

## **Is Alf a friend or foe?**

In other words, if Alf, the furry non-Muppet character circa 1986, were to materialize as a friend of the Crown, and he did not like some legislation about cats that was introduced, just by having the ear of the Crown or the proprietor or the council, the legislation to protect cats could be defeated.

Just by Alf's whispering, the people's voice could be overturned. This would occur simply because of Alf or perhaps it was really a guy named Gordon Shumway (Alf's pseudonym). Additionally, the Tanner family (human family home where Alf lived in the sitcom) would have no standing in the matter. You get my point.

The assembly had something that the Crown really did not want to give up but it already had. The lower legislature had the power of taxation. In retrospect, the Crown must have viewed this as a major faux pas.

Since the Assembly had the right of taxation and the Crown did not, the normal and natural governance of the colonies seemingly was in control of the colonists -- other than the veto power etc. of the other loyal bodies.

Historians might even claim that the colonies were self-governing, and they should have had no concern for their liberties as long as they and they alone could retain this sole right of taxing themselves. We'll see how this notion plays out later in this section.

For the British, this did become a big problem. Not having any say in controlling the purse strings (tax coffers) of the colonies was a big issue that kept getting bigger as American wallets, made of the finest British leather, got fatter and fatter. The poor Brits had not given themselves an easy way of siphoning off a few pence for the Crown. A faux pas indeed!

This representative system of government, though obviously flawed, was common to all the colonies, but it did not enter the sphere of influence in Georgia until 1752. The notion began in Virginia in 1619; as noted previously it made it to Massachusetts in 1634, and it hit Maryland in 1639.

The system of representative government was allowed by the Crown, but not required, by the early charters. After it had begun

almost spontaneously in a number of colonies, it became a big part of a number of the charters. The people loved it. People love having control of their own destiny still today.

## The problem with colonial suffrage

The one little piece of the fight for democracy puzzle that we have intentionally left out so far was that there was no colony in which universal suffrage was to be found. How about that? It was a piece of democracy in which certain people had to first be anointed.

If you were not anointed, you did not get to vote. Sounds like cause for a revolution -- but we are moving too quickly. The notion of "who was able to vote" gave back a bit more power to the Crown than otherwise might have been noticed. Theoretically, the Crown could stack the deck in the House of Representatives so that some crooked people in the Assembly, and not the people in general would control the purse.

The people of the colonies had lots of concerns and they had many reasons to fear. Most importantly, they feared for their lives. For example, there were these guys known as Native Americans, colloquially described as "Indians" during colonial times, since originally the settlers thought they had discovered India.

These folks were not as some may think—a western U.S. phenomenon and only a major nemesis of cowboys. In fact, at the time, there was no western U.S.

The "Indians," many of whom had died from disease over the hundred or so years preceding the colonists, were not very happy that uninvited guests were in their territory, and so they protected what they saw as theirs, and thus, there were conflicts with the settlers.

The colonists therefore needed as much help as they could get to guard against the Indians and the wild animals and any other fears, real or imaginary. The British Government Officials and the British Army provided reassurances and for a time it seemed the British did all this work for free.

Moreover, the colonists also wanted the right to attend their own churches so they could talk to their maker without interference and they wanted to have a safe trip each Sunday both forth and back. Their affiliation with the British provided these assurances.

## The Towns

Knowing that to be alone in this semi-wilderness was at best an at-risk notion, they settled in small, compact communities, or townships. They called them simply towns. In these times, the town was a legal corporation, a political unit more or less, and in the big scheme of colonial life, it was represented in the General Court or another governing body. The Town itself where colonists lived thus had political standing.

It could be argued that this whole notion (if we take the Crown from the Picture) was a representative democracy of the purest type. The people met (adult males) and discussed the issues of the day; they created taxes for the common good, and they created laws to make it simpler to put the bad guys away. How could anything be better?

Colonialism and its pluses and minuses is not the matter of focus for this book but it helps in understanding why the colonists revolted. In this section, so far, we recounted a number of things you already know from the beginning of colonialism to the period of time right before the revolution.

In all of the notions that we just discussed, I am unaware of any that suggest that the public representatives of the time before the revolution until at least the year 1750, were working for anything other than a better town or community. Yes, there was taxation, but, there was also some form of representation, though not perfect. There was resentment by the colonists in tithing for the Crown but there were some benefits delivered for the taxation. After 1750, however it seemed to get a lot worse.

Of course, that is not how it is today and as we move forward through this chapter, we hope to identify the roots of the change and carry that into the representative pandemic from which today we suffer. If you were alive in 1750, then you know what I am talking

about but if you came shortly after, you may have to take my word about a number of these very important events.

Today we know the Democrats say blue and the Republicans say red, and 47% of the people feel one way and 47% feel the other way. Besides them, there are about six percent in the middle who are for something else. If we were to put a few names on that something else, on a perennial basis, the names in the past might be spelled, "Ron Paul" or "Dennis Kucinich."

The latter six percent of American voters are known today by the media as undecided. A good part of them are Independent thinkers or so they would like to describe themselves. The 1750 crowd never knew it was going to get like it is or I am sure these great minds would have done something about it then to prevent it today.

The Colonial "Democracies" were NOT like the state governments or the Federal Government that we have today. The "voice of the people" was often artificially limited—at times just to property-owning white men. Suffrage was not a big deal since men and mostly rich men were more tuned-in than anyone else. Women were simply denied the right to vote, and there were few discussions about that.

On top of all the natural potential for corruption before 1750, the structure made it really easy. The colonial governors in some cases did have autocratic powers, and could act accordingly, despite the democratic aspect. If they decided to take more power than they were entitled, nobody was powerful enough to answer back.

Some of these governors, as noted previously, were appointed by the Crown back in England. Even those that were not Crown appointees could not be overruled by the people's representative legislatures, even if they so desired.





# Chapter 10 England Dominated the New World



*Thirteen Colonies of North America: Dark Red = New England colonies. Bright Red = Middle Atlantic colonies. Red-brown = Southern colonies.*

## To the victor belong the spoils

As the most successful imperialist nation of the day, Britain won control over American lands during the 17th and 18th centuries, and lost to the Americans in the late 18th century. Its control of the seas and its notion of colonial representative government were major

factors in its ultimate success. The English nation of yore had a keen ability to recognize a good deal when it had one coming its way.

The European countries such as England, Holland (Dutch Republic), Spain, France, and Portugal developed colonies in the Western Hemisphere for many reasons, but primarily the reason was to bring in more revenue for the home state.

Though the English were late arrivals, they ultimately took all the spoils. The colonies were a great source of raw materials for trade (e.g. furs and precious metals) and they served as ready markets for finished products.

The Spanish, French, and Dutch had small settlements in what is now the continental US for a long time before the English got fully involved. But, none of the settlements were of major consequence.

As the thirteen colonies began to grow with immigrants pouring in from a number of different countries, these settlers, who more and more thought of themselves as Americans, regardless of their origin, liked the English system much better than the authoritarian systems of the other countries.

When England made its moves to capture these colonies as well as Florida, which was not one of the original thirteen colonies and which was hitherto dominated by the Spanish, they did so with ease. The settlers in many ways were happy to move to the more representative system of government, though as noted previously, it was not perfect. Florida could have been the fourteenth colony, but instead it did not sign up. Eventually Florida became the 27th state of the Union.

The success it had in the continual conflicts between the European countries and England -- especially the conflicts with the French, culminating in the French and Indian War (1754–1763) positioned the English to dominate the New World. The French and Indian War was the North American front for a war going on in Europe at the time known as the Seven Years War, in which most of the European powers and England were battling.

## France Was the Big Loser

The North American name for the war comes from the two major enemies of the British in America, namely the French and the various American Indian tribes. England emerged the big winner in this war, resulting in its conquest of all of what had been labeled New France (French claimed land east of the Mississippi), in addition to Spanish Florida.

The French were big losers on both fronts in this war—Europe and America. In fact the combination of the French and Indian War and the Seven Year War in Europe ended France's position as a major colonial power in the Americas.

Their losses were huge and the French were left with little more than French Guiana, Guadeloupe, Martinique, Saint-Dominguez, Saint Pierre, and Miquelon. To pay off the Spanish for its support in the war and Spain's loss of Florida, the French ceded control of French Louisiana (West of the Mississippi).

Perhaps more devastating to France was its demise as the leading power in Europe. It sustained such heavy losses in the war that it was not until the French Revolution that France again became a major force in Europe.

## American leaders understood the British Government

Getting back on point, nothing that the English or the French or the Dutch Republic or the Portuguese or Spanish did during this pre-revolutionary period caused the current lack of faith in representative government as exists today in the United States. This lack of confidence in the motivation of duly elected representatives who represent special interests and themselves today rather than their constituencies was not a phenomenon of the 18th century.

In fact, as noted, the ultimate takeover of the colonies by the British in many ways was welcomed by the settlers because the British offered the concept of self-government, whereas their European

counterparts were autocratic and authoritarian in dealing with the residents of the New World.

This notion of self-government and representative government marked the colonies' early political development and this notion continues to exist today, though admittedly today in the U.S. it is in need of a bit of rebuilding. That, my friends, is why you are reading this book.

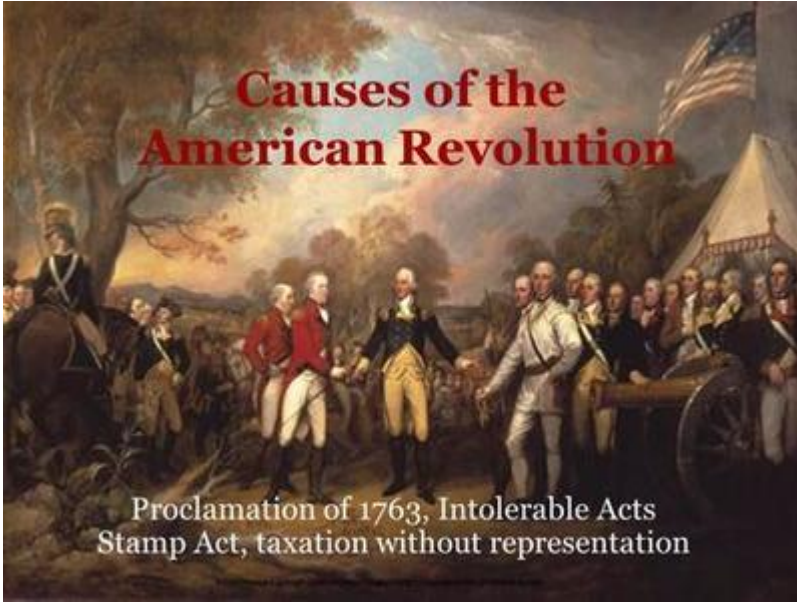
All good things must come to an end, or so it seems. The rise of self-government in the colonies was a direct result of the fact that many of the English colonies were created as private corporate enterprises and as proprietary ventures. Additionally, a good number of the English colonists were knowledgeable of government and had in fact participated in government at home. So, they carried this tradition with them to America. They knew a good deal from a bad deal.

As noted previously, England was a bit late to the colonial party. It was not until the 17th century that the English Parliament, the legislative branch, began to stretch its own powers at the direct expense of the English Crown. These internal English "constitutional" struggles were not lost on the early Americans.

In fact, most of the English in America supported the Parliament and the notion of representative government. In the British colonies, this was marked within the three original types of colonies, which we examined earlier as the Royal colonies, Proprietary colonies, and Charter colonies.

## Part IV: The Revolution

### Chapter 11 The Seeds of Revolution



#### The Beginning of the End

The beginning of the end of the love affair of the colonists with English-style government came about when the English government began to appear to the colonists as big bullies, and not grand protectors. The British began to impose direct controls and taxes on the settlers. The French and Indian War had given England control of the thirteen colonies plus other American territories. They had yet to flex their muscles.

And so, it seems that finally, somebody in England said that it was time to collect from the colonists. England had forgotten that their conquering of the other European powers in America was partly because the Americans liked how they were being treated by the Brits. Increasing taxes and controlling actions in America without the colonist's permission was strictly taboo. The British simply did not get it! Americans would not put up with crap! There, I said it!

It seems that the British snatched defeat from the jaws of victory as they seemingly could not stand their own success and they began to behave badly from an American colonial standpoint. We still might be British subjects if the Crown had not gotten so greedy.

In the 1750's some historical estimates suggest that the 13 colonies had about 5 million people. The "benevolent" King of England at the time (Not King Charles), King George III had concerns about how to protect so many people from invaders, be they American Indians or other European powers.

He chose to do so with a British army of 10,000 men stationed in America for the "protection of the colonists." Though some objected to a standing English army in the Americas, many others did not have an issue. But, then, King George III decided he did not really want the Crown to pick up the tab for all of the soldiers so he figured the colonists should pony up to pay the bill. The colonists obviously thought otherwise especially since they were not asked. Britain had already been extracting its "due" from the colonies, and the due bill was about to expand.

## **Illegal Taxation – Stamp Act, etc.**

England did not want to admit publicly that its resources had been stretched in all of the wars it had just won. The burden of providing the colonists with the protection they expected became a bit more than the British wanted to handle.

Their own government, which the colonists were faithfully operating under, had not provided a means for England to grab funds directly from the colonists without permission. For its own reasons, England, the most powerful nation in the world chose not to ask the colonists. Instead, they decided to "take."

King George saw himself as the ultimate ruler and so he imposed a tax on the colonists in what was known as the Stamp Act of 1765. Just a few years after defeating the American Indians and the French across the globe, the British could not wait for the lower house in the colonies to tax themselves for the support of the British standing army.

Instead, without authority, they simply imposed the tax. This tax was to be paid by having tax stamps placed on newspapers, licenses, calendars, playing cards, dice and other items that were frequently purchased in the colonies.

These were today's equivalent of smart phones, and iPhones, and iPads and iPods, and the finest e-games of the century. The British decided to whack Americans with a big tax if they chose to enjoy themselves.

Think of the word "impose" and then think of how you feel when someone else's will is imposed on yours for any reason whatsoever. Think of the Cap and Trade debate, which has quiesced for now, and the major healthcare debates of 2014.

Likewise, the colonists were enraged at the King and the Parliament since they felt the British had violated their own Constitution. Only the lower assemblies as elected by the colonists were permitted to decide which taxes should be levied, how much, when they were to become effective, and who was to get the cash.

The protests began immediately and in 1766 the colonists appeared to have gained a victory as the British government quickly gave in and repealed the Stamp Act. But King George III was not finished. He knew at the time, he was the King, and no other cards mattered.

## The Quartering Act

Another nasty little Act that was imposed on the colonists at about the same time was something called the Quartering Act. Colonists despised this act. Instead of having to pay for the 1760 equivalent of a hotel room, under this law, American colonists had to provide housing, candles, bedding, and beverages to the British soldiers stationed in the various colonies. Quartering means "Give them a room and amenities." American men and women were not very happy about this.

Again the British were looking for a means to pay for their empire defense costs in America following the French and Indian War and another little war known as Pontiac's War.

A number of American Indian tribes at the time were understandably upset when the British and French stopped their war and the British were declared the victors and the Native Americans were left out of the deal. The Indians had been fighting on the side of the French and got nothing out of the surrender deal.

Pontiac's War was named after the Ottawa Tribe Chief Pontiac, who was the most prominent of the many native leaders (Indian Chiefs) involved in the conflict. Ultimately the British finished them off, but they remained unhappy.

In the same vein as the Stamp Act of this same year, various English Acts presented a big problem. After all, even the uninjured without a dog in the fight can easily see that the whole thing was just an uninvited assertion of British authority over the colonies.

It completely disregarded the fact that troops had been financed for the prior 150 years by representative provincial assemblies rather than by the Parliament and Crown in London. Americans wanted nothing to do with London controlling America—at least not so obviously.

Locations, which quartered more than their fair share of British soldiers, such as New York; resented the Quartering Act even more so and they were outwardly defiant. The problem at this time was that there was no way that the British were about to go away empty handed.

They began to dig in more and more to protect their perceived "right" to get at the purse of the colonies through direct taxation. This was despite their own laws imposed for a long time on the colonists in which they had excluded themselves from being legally able to coerce the colonists to pay or else. The colonists reacted predictably. They were incensed at the betrayal.

The British determination was felt as they exercised their strength in ways that the colonists had never before witnessed. Because of the resistance for example, of the Quartering Act, they almost immediately instituted the Suspending Act.

This was insult to injury as it prohibited the New York Assembly from conducting any further business until the colony complied with



the financial requirements of the resented Quartering Act. It was like England had declared war on New York.

When things did not look good, the British always seemed to do something to make matters worse.

For example, they also initiated another act that has been called the Townshend Act. In this act, duties were imposed just as in the Stamp Act. This time, however, the taxes were noted as Townsend duties and were applied to lead, glass, paper, and tea and the tax was payable immediately at colonial ports.

After a reprieve from the Quartering Act, in 1770, the colonists found themselves suffering from an additional quartering clause, which was included in the Intolerable Acts of 1774. The colonists were becoming more ready to face off against the British rather than endure what they saw as continual harassment. The American Revolution was getting closer.



## Chapter 12 The Honeymoon Is Over



### No taxation without representation

The British government's honeymoon with the American colonists was well over but many colonists felt that it would be better to just act like it was OK. Yes, there were appeasers even back in early America. Think of the situation in which Britain found itself.

Unlike the Dutch and the Spanish and the French, their ruling style was not authoritarian and they had given the colonists the right to decide to whom they paid tribute. After all that fighting with American Indians and French and others, the British felt they had a right to something out of the deal. Where were their spoils? Since they had not asked for any up-front, Americans were not about to give. And the Brits, desperately in need of funds, thought they were powerful enough not to have to ask.

Perhaps with diplomacy, the British Parliament could have convinced the lower assemblies of the colonies to see it their way. They also could have used some pressures from the governor or the council and court system to gain the will of the colonists so that they would agree as a group to be taxed to support the protection funding which would keep the British Army nice and cuddly at night.

One thing is for sure, the way it went down, the Americans were not ready for an imposition and the British were not ready to make America a loss-leader "possession."

Parliament was not about to give up. They showed their resiliency to play another round by finding other means of taxing the colonists. Their next try was an import tax on everything. The colonists did more than offer objections.

Checkmate for the colonists when they boycotted all imports from England. After a few minor scuffles and 18 months of time, Parliament dropped the tax on everything but tea and then the British ships had to sail away from Boston Harbor.

In 1773, the British were back and at it again hoping that knowingly or unknowingly they could get the colonists to buy teas with the tax buried in the price. Shiploads of tea from India were of lower cost and they sold it so low that even with the tax included, many of the colonists, who enjoyed the English tea customs from the old world, could not resist purchasing it.

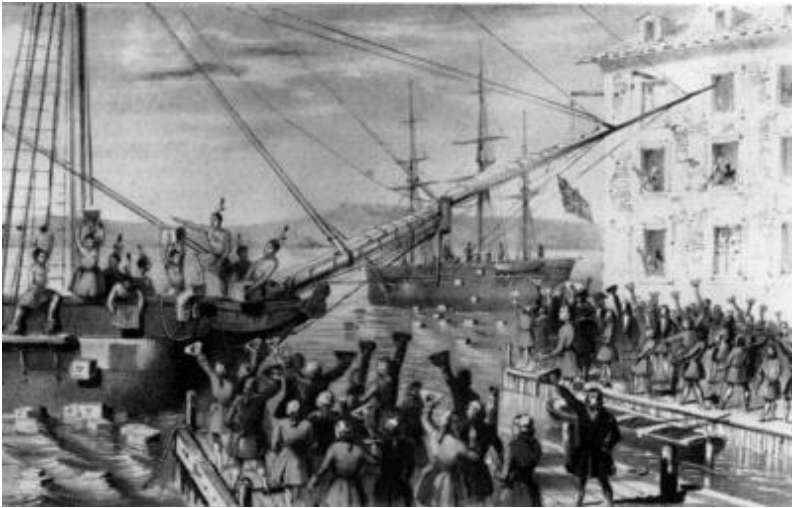
It actually was a good deal but it would have been a better deal without Mother England grabbing an unauthorized cut of the proceeds. And, so there were many colonists who hated England's actions. They resisted vigorously and finally chose to take action as patriots to stop the sailors from unloading the tea.

This is just a little reminder of the fact at this point in the story, the royal governor of Massachusetts, who happened to be Thomas Hutchinson, reported to the Crown and not to the people. So, with the people, he had no standing on the matter.

Hutchinson decided to use his power to muster the British Troops and have the ships unloaded under their protection.

As most Americans well know the story, the Bostonians disguised themselves as Indians, snuck onto the ships and dumped about 340 tea chests into the sea. It was called the Boston Tea Party and quite a party indeed.

Figure 10-1 Boston Tea Party



"The Destruction of Tea at Boston Harbor." 1773. Copy of lithograph by Sarony & Major, 1846. -- National Archives and Records Administration

This is another lesson in representative government. "No Taxation without Representation." And it certainly demonstrates how clever the constituency can become when made angry of taxes imposed by a body not representing the people. Shall we all take lessons?

In the past most Americans from grade school through high school learned the principles upon which this country was built and along with that the notion of representation.

Unfortunately, because progressive socialists now control education, and most of our government infrastructure, our children may not know what we are talking about when we discuss this part of history. There was a day in which Civics as a subject was as important as reading, 'riting, and 'rithmetic.

Looking back at the Boston Tea Party we can ask ourselves again questions about why Americans, after 200 years are so upset again!

The question to be answered is: "Who is it that our elected officials represent - a combination of special interests and themselves or the people alone?"

It seems that in recent times this answer is rarely, "the people" and if it is; it is never alone! The British eventually learned its lesson well. Americans must teach our teachers and our leaders well, once and for all.

America was able to prevail against the most powerful imperialist country at the time—England. Can you imagine if the Colonists had a real Superman on their side—how much easier defeating the British would have been. Americans today would love to have the Superman from the Action Comic Books or the George Reeve’s Superman from black/white TV come to life for real to battle the ills of WOKENESS and Cancel Culture. It sure would be nice.

Without Superman, in order to maintain the notion of Truth, Justice, & the American Way today, U.S., state, and local legislators need to relearn this lesson or The U.S. may be looking at some more Tea in Boston and other areas of the mainland some time soon. In 2014 as we have seen Tea Parties in the US were capable of making a comeback. They still are.

My party, the Democrats, have chosen to denigrate the moms and the pops and people like you and I who express outrage at the tyranny of our central government. They call those of a conservative ideology all TEA Party. Yet, I am a Democrat by registration. What do they know other than hate for anybody not thinking their collective way.

Why not just let the people decide who has the better message? Why cheat and defame opponents simply because we do not want the country turned over to the socialist progressive Marxists and the WOKESTERS..

Just as the tea tax upset the settlers, the tea party that was held with prepaid British tea made the British furious. Parliament and the King were embarrassed that a colony could impose its will on the Great Britain. They would not stand still on that matter or on the matter of getting their share by taxing the colonies.

Not really to be taken lightly, the British brought their ships back into Boston harbor and they imposed a blockade on trade until the colonists agreed to pay for the spoiled tea.

With the port of Boston being a major point of commerce in Massachusetts at the time, the colonists had little choice but to give in or face financial ruin. But, their message was well delivered even if not well taken. The British were firing up again, the strongest of

those who had emigrated from their shores for similar reasons. Americans are a tough lot indeed. Such Americans would not stand still. They would rather fight than give-in.

## The Intolerable Acts

The activity of the British known as the "Intolerable Acts" was so intolerable that it led to the colonists calling the first Continental Congress of the thirteen colonies. In other words, the USA, on its own, without even being the USA at the time, were getting ready to talk turkey long after the Pilgrims.

And, so, the colonies, knowing their representatives could be shot or otherwise held accountable by the British for treason of the Crown, chose to convene in Philadelphia's Carpenters Hall on September 5, 1774. Consider all of the delegates in this meeting as having begun the fight for their freedom which in fact was the fight for your freedom.

They risked life and limb for sure, and the British were expected to be vindictive in victory or defeat. So, these colonists, the original patriots, had deep concerns for the welfare of their country and their families.

They finished their work on October 26, 1774. It had been a meeting of 56 delegates from 12 of the 13 colonies. Major historical figures such as John Adams, his cousin Samuel Adams, Patrick Henry, and George Washington were present when this first meeting of the united colonies was held.

Only Georgia, the newest colony at the time, was absent from the meeting as its English-controlled Governor ordered its delegates not to attend.

The Congress met until late October with its major function to affirm the right of the colonies to life, liberty and property and to assure that they would meet again the following year.

If Superman were present as a model, the motto would surely have been Truth, Justice, and the American Way as the colonists were fashioning the American Way for posterity.

Among their work was a letter to the King of England demanding an end to the blockade, and the Congress also approved resolutions for the people of Massachusetts to arm themselves, and to stop trading with Britain. These were gutsy calls even without a super hero such as Superman imbedded on the American team.

## **Declaration of Rights and Grievances**

Two principal accomplishments of the Congress were the formation of a Continental Association as well as the Declaration of Rights and Grievances, a historical document included with this book.

The text of the Declaration is shown in Appendix A and the text of the Articles of Association is shown in Appendix B.

This patriotic association (Articles of Association) set up a boycott against importing British goods to the colonies. The teeth of this boycott was its enforcement by community groups and small committees. All of these patriots feared that the English would take their lives for such treason against the British Crown. Yet, they were brave enough to carry on.

The Declaration of Rights and Grievances was the formalization of the letter to King George and it called on the Crown to disband its army, cease and desist in the enforcement of its "Intolerable Acts," adhere to the right of no taxation without representation, and to recognize the right to liberty of the American people as protected by the common law of England.

The Declaration also called on the King to restore the benefits of the existing English statutes at the time of their colonization. Just as these protected the English in England so also, according to the Declaration should they protect the English Colonists in America?

This was a major operation on the part of the colonists by rejecting the "Intolerable Acts" and it specified the only acceptable basis for a continued relationship between England and America. Though polite, it was a forceful document.





*The First Continental Congress - Carpenter's Hall Philadelphia*

Article Four of this work was authored by John Adams. This article is fundamental to the notion of representation as we are learning in this book. It states that representation of the people in their legislature is a fundamental English right, essential to free government.

Moreover, it acknowledges that colonists could not be and were not represented in Parliament ( England), and thus it concluded that that body of the Parliament had no control over them.

It went on to inform the King that only by consent of the colonies—which America cheerfully granted—did Parliament have a right to regulate trade.

In a powerful assertion, it concluded that such regulation by the Crown must not have as its purpose the raising of any kind of revenue. In other words, the message clearly was that with no representation there would never be taxation. These words were delivered plain and simple. The patriots were strong willed and brave Americans.

This was not the beginning of the revolution per se but the winds of war were blowing. America had not yet declared independence, but one could sense that the beginnings of a war for freedom's sake were in motion.

There was some real hope that the formal written plea to the King would work but, just in case, the colonists put together a plan to elect delegates to a Second Continental Congress to deal with the possibility that the King would simply dismiss their concerns.

King George III for his part was enraged at what he viewed as an "illegal" and treasonous document sent by the colonists and he was not moved to corrective action. After all, he was the King of the most powerful nation on earth.

The response to a potential revolution was in the offing as the colonists suspected. Brave as ever men would ever be, the colonists were ready to take on the Brits to preserve our America. That is why we celebrate the Fourth of July. Bravo to our patriots who fell in battle to preserve our freedom and liberty.

## Chapter 13 The Beginning of the American Revolution



### Friends do not wage war with friends.

In preparation for a potential war with the Crown, the colonists began to train and gather arms and ammunition. They were brave indeed to take such action.

Anybody who spent one day at the firing range in the military of the US knows that all soldiers must fire a weapon at least once to understand the force with which a rifle or a pistol or a revolver sends its metal projectile forward. Eventually, the troop gets qualified but the major issue is not qualification.

The spookiest time for a Sergeant on the range is when a new group of nobodies shows up to learn how to become soldiers. The sergeant must assure that the troops always assume there is a round in the chamber and that they carry their weapons accordingly way up or way down to the ground so nobody gets hurt by a mistake.

Their biggest problem for any troop on the first day on the range is adapting to the hellish sound of a round, once chambered, and then fired at a target. This preparation during the revolution made the American troops stronger in battle against the British professional army than even the British expected.

This was well noticed by British General Sir Thomas Gage, the Commander in Chief of the British forces and he became very concerned. Feeling that this was a plot of treason against the Crown, he planned to take action.

On the night of April 18, 1775, his troops seized some of the supplies and, according to some accounts; they planned to arrest two of the militia's leaders, Sam Adams and John Hancock.

Other accounts suggest that Gage didn't order troops to arrest John Hancock and Samuel Adams in Lexington on their way to Concord and as we have learned, such historian disputes almost never fully are resolved.

After Gage's papers were reflected in history, it is clear that a number of patriots thought that the capture of colonial leaders was probably the British column's mission, and they prepared accordingly. But, the facts indicate that was not really Gage's plan. Nonetheless, you can feel the type of tension that was growing between American patriots and the British army.

## **Paul Revere**

Paul Revere had been a hero in the pre-revolution period in his ability to bring needed communication among the colonies about very important matters. Thanks to his warnings that the “British were coming,” as well as those of William Dawes, Joseph Warren, and others, the militia was waiting for the British and thus the American Revolution began the next day.

Paul Revere and the other patriots rode from Boston to Concord through the dark on the eve of April 19, 1775, to warn as many families and country folk as they could of the danger about to come.

The next day war broke out in the battles of Lexington and Concord. The revolution had begun. The unprepared and disorganized British ultimately had to retreat. The Minutemen prevailed and put the British on the chase. History will never forget that day.

## Concord Hymn

BY RALPH WALDO EMERSON

Sung at the Completion of the Battle Monument, July 4, 1837

By the rude bridge that arched the flood,  
 Their flag to April's breeze unfurled,  
 Here once the embattled farmers stood  
 And fired the shot heard round the world.

The foe long since in silence slept;  
 Alike the conqueror silent sleeps;  
 And Time the ruined bridge has swept  
 Down the dark stream which seaward creeps.

On this green bank, by this soft stream,  
 We set today a votive stone;  
 That memory may their deed redeem,  
 When, like our sires, our sons are gone.

Spirit, that made those heroes dare  
 To die, and leave their children free,  
 Bid Time and Nature gently spare  
 The shaft we raise to them and thee.

Ralph Waldo Emerson, in his beloved Concord Hymn described the first shot fired by the patriots at the North Bridge as the "shot heard 'round the world." The clear irony of this shot however comes about because nobody knew then, nor is it known today; who it was who actually fired that first shot of the American Revolution.

It is as if from then 'til now, we moved from not being able to find a bullet, to not being able to find a huge Boeing 777. Who knows why? For the colonists, the mission was freedom, and the fact that a shot was fired, began the war. Whoever knows anything about the missing plane, I suspect will keep their silence.

No taxation without representation, the rationale for freedom, was a major cause of Americans joining in for the fight for liberty. Today, without bloodshed, the battle of the Whigs and the Tories continues in the halls of Congress while neither seems to care about the will of the people. You are reading this book because you care.

Unlike the late 1700's this new group of "representatives" does not understand the value of public opinion and so these esteemed representatives in the U.S. in the latter part of the 20th century and past the first decade of the 21st seem much more ready to manipulate public opinion than to work to fulfill the public will.

## **The Second Continental Congress (May 10, 1775, to March 1, 1781)**

The Second Continental Congress met for the first time on May 10, 1775, during the war, on a day, which incidentally was the same date as the American capture of Fort Ticonderoga.

The American Revolutionary War continued with battle after battle. George Washington was appointed Commander of the troops even before the Second Continental Congress. The militias had gotten the colonists through the first battles of the war with England.

Now, with Washington leading an Army of the United Colonists, the superiority of numbers represented by the more than 5 million colonists was expected by the colonists to mathematically eliminate the Old World British from having its way in America. But, the British were well armed and well prepared, and they rarely chose to stand down against what they perceived to be a weaker foe.

The more skill Washington gave the American forces, along with the more effective leadership he provided, the more it reduced the American casualties and it helped give the troops the stomach to see the Revolutionary War to its ultimate victory.

Americans thought so much of his work in this regard that after the war, they elected him the first President, and they were more than willing to make George Washington, America's first and only King.

Washington of course would have none of the pomp and circumstance.

It's time to remind the readers again that this is not a history book and so there is lots missing from the fantastic story of the American Revolution. Information is readily available on the Internet as well as in many wonderful books that give accounts right from the journals and diaries of the soldiers themselves on both sides.

The purpose again of this book is to show how hard our founders worked for our freedom; that freedom does not come easy; and that it can be lost if it is not tended to. Additionally, there is always room for a Superman to appear on the scene to help the cause.

And so after finishing our discussion of the war, we go through the founding documents in chapters that follow, so that we can help all Americans know their rights, and how precious they are.

That's why all Americans must pay attention to our government to stand against every hint of corruption. We cannot afford to ever lose our precious hard-fought freedom. Standing up for freedom is an act of bravery, even today!

If you like this story about how Americans obtained their freedom, and this has given you a new interest in those subjects that may not have been quite as interesting in high school, I repeat that your need for knowledge can be easily met on the Internet. The Internet can also direct you to some wonderful books on the subject, including those used in K-12, colleges, and universities.

## Putting Freedom in Perspective

During the trauma of the revolution, the bravery and direct suffering of the colonists to insure for Americans for all time the rights to life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness and of course *Truth, Justice, and the American Way*, surely puts our freedom in perspective.

Many of these brave souls died to preserve our right of representation, and it is that right that is under attack again today, though in a much more subtle and muted way. It is time we

Americans band together and shun those who are against America and for Marxism, Wuism, or any other ism that sours the palate of patriotic Americans. a

As noted above, while the American Revolutionary War was in progress, on May 10, 1775, as directed by the First Constitutional Congress, members of the Second Continental Congress met at the State House in Philadelphia. Again there were major historical figures in their membership including John Hancock from Massachusetts, Thomas Jefferson of Virginia, and Benjamin Franklin from Pennsylvania.

The New England battles were still fresh in the minds of the representatives and the colonial militia was still outside of Boston working to drive the British from the area. The Second Continental Congress gave the preceding events an air of legitimacy and established the militia as the Continental Army to defend the thirteen states from the only known enemy of the day, England.

With Washington anointed as the Commander in Chief of the Continental Army, the colonists clearly meant business.

As upbeat as the delegates were to the Second Continental Congress, many expected, and at least hoped, at the outset, that the issues between colonies and mother country would be healed. This was not a congress whose mission it was to sanctify a revolution.

Additionally, even though the delegates themselves believed they had no legal right to govern, since they were all still part of the dominion of the Crown, they went ahead and did so anyway since there was little choice, and they knew that weakness would provide nothing they needed.

They did have the ability to ask the "states" to provide money, supplies and men for the war effort, but just as the request was without authority, the answer if positive was purely voluntary. The states were free to accept, reject or modify these requests. They asked and for the most part they received what was needed from the states. That is why there is an America today.

This Congress knew that to make the war a success, it needed a stronger central authority. If you remember the last big 4th of July



fireworks display you saw. It memorializes July 4, 1776, when the Declaration of Independence was drafted, signed by John Hancock, and sent to the printers.

The Second Continental Congress put forth the work to create the United States of America (though no states at the time were actually ratified) as an independent country. In summary, the matters of work put forth by this Congress are noted below:

## Matters of the 2nd Congress

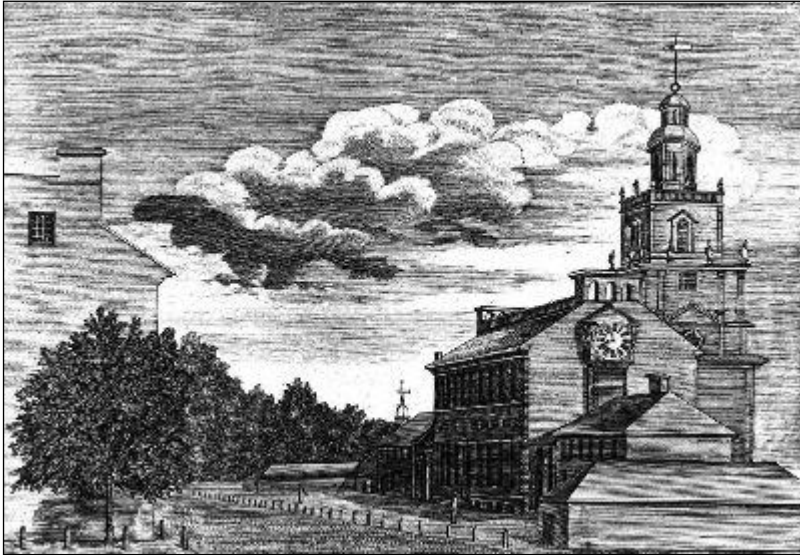
**The Congress**, having met on May 10, 1775, accomplished many tasks related to the new government and related to the growing revolutionary war with England from the time that it convened to its conclusion on March 1, 1781. Among these are the following:

**"State" Governments:** The Congress adopted a resolution that urged the colonies to form their own independent governments to replace the all-but fully defunct royal governments. By the time the Second Continental Congress met, the American Revolutionary War had already started with the Battles of Lexington and Concord. These battles were fought on April 19, 1775, in Middlesex County, Province of Massachusetts Bay, within the towns of Lexington, Concord, Lincoln, Menotomy (present-day Arlington), and Cambridge, near Boston.

After this part of the war, patriots expelled royal officials from all the colonies, and took control through the establishment of Provincial Congresses. Once the "state" governments were seized by the colonists, there were no colonies anymore and the term state in the unofficial sense (not ratified) began to be used to refer to the original thirteen colonies. These became the original thirteen states.

However, by the time state ratification came, they had been operating independently of Britain for some time. For example, Delaware was the first state to ratify on December 7, 1787, and on May 29, 1790, Rhode Island became the last of the original thirteen to become a state. During the time between lots was happening. The Revolutionary War was fought and won; the Articles of Confederation were ratified, and the Constitution was drafted, presented and ratified.

*Figure 4-3 Second Continental Congress*



*Second Continental Congress at the State House in Philadelphia*

**Military:** On June 14, 1775, Congress voted to create and assume control of the Continental Army and it appointed George Washington, a congressman from Virginia as commanding general. It was originally formed from military units from the Boston vicinity.

**War Justification:** Hoping to avoid a major escalation of hostilities with England, Congress approved petitions such as Dickinson's Olive Branch Petition, a statement of abiding loyalty to the king, but disapproval of the actions of his ministers and Parliament. Congress also approved a much stronger statement titled: the Declaration of the Causes and the Necessity of Taking up Arms on July 6, 1775. This second document suggested that if America's rights are not restored, independence will be sought.

**War Financing:** This Congress issued certificates and borrowed from colonial and foreign sources. Financing was a major problem which continued for much of the war.

**Independence:** By July 2, 1776, the Congress was accepting that colonial rights were not going to be granted and it passed Richard Henry Lee's resolution of June 1776 that promoted the notion of independence. Lee's resolution of independence was adopted by Congress (12 colonies -- New York abstained). Jefferson's

Declaration of Independence was completed after many revisions with the help of Ben Franklin and others on July 4, 1776.

John Hancock, President of Congress and Secretary Charles Thomson signed the original document and sent it to the Printing Shop of Charles Dunlap, just a few blocks away. The formal signing of this Declaration of Independence, on a huge parchment, was effected by 50 delegates on August 2, 1776. Some signed this original document later. Several hundred copies were sent to various governments across the world, reflecting the seriousness of the matter. The United States was henceforth open for business.

**Independence Humor:** President John Hancock signed the declaration's parchment, laid down his pen (quill) and said to the body in a very serious tone: "We must all hang together." Benjamin Franklin, upon hearing his comment replied: "Yes, we must, indeed, all hang together, or most assuredly we shall all hang separately."

The text of the full Declaration of Independence is included in this book as Appendix C. You may enjoy reading it now before you continue.

**Diplomatic Channels:** The Congress needed world recognition and allies for its independence undertaking. They dispatched Silas Deane to France and later with the help of Arthur Lee and Benjamin Franklin; they concluded the Franco-American Alliance (1778).

**Laws:** The Congress still did not have authority to pass binding legislation on the states but did approve a number of non-binding resolutions. The technique was to ask the states to provide resources, including fighting men, for the war effort. Thankfully, in most cases, the states agreed, or we might be looking at Prince Charles as our next king..

To gain the authority needed to win the war, the Congress sought to make itself a stronger central authority. The July 1776 proposal called the Articles of Confederation, shown in Appendix D, was intended to do just that. Upon introduction, however, the ambivalence of some of the delegates sparked a lengthy debate before the articles were adopted in November 1777. Ratification of the Articles by the states was not completed until 1781. As they say in Scranton, PA, the rest is "history."



# Chapter 14 The American Revolution Summary

## Causes, Events, and Chronology



### A New Nation Is Born

The French and Indian War was very expensive to wage, and it cost Britain a lot of money. Britain felt that it was helping the colonists by fighting the war and so it wanted the American colonies to help pay for it. That is how the big issues between the colonists and King George began. Like many other fights begin in life, it was a fight over money.

And, so as discussed in detail in prior chapters, in the 1760's the British passed new taxes forcing the colonists to pay additional money for sugar, tea, and other things. The colonists were incensed. Eventually, it got so bad in Boston that they threw crates of British Tea into Boston Harbor. The colonists were "mad as hell and were not going to take it anymore." In 1774, they held their First Continental Congress at Carpenter's Hall, Philadelphia to talk things over.

The colonists' resistance started peacefully with petitions and pamphlets and moved to intimidation, boycotts, and inter-colonial meetings. Many events as discussed above exacerbated the friction.

These include the Boston Massacre, the Boston Tea Party, and the Coercive Acts. These destroyed the one-time good relations between Britain and its American colonies.

Attempts through the Sugar Act, the Stamp Act, and the Townshend Acts to raise money rather than simply control trade met with deep resistance in the colonies. Such taxation was something new: Parliament had previously passed measures to regulate trade in the colonies, but it had never before directly taxed the colonies to raise revenue

The severe tensions increased and the division escalated further after Parliament passed the Coercive Acts and so the First Continental Congress took the initial steps toward independence from Britain. Before the colonies gained real independence, however, they had to fight a long and bitter war.

The patriots at the first Congress talked about plans to make Britain treat the colonies more fairly. Britain was the most powerful nation on earth at the time and it largely ignored these ideas and then sent its troops to control the colonists. The colonists had local militias at the time but chose to begin to recruit men from all of the states to handle this threat from England.

And, so the American Revolution began with the shot heard round the world in the battles of Lexington and Concord. In 1776, the colonists knew their world had become intolerable by the rapid British intrusion into American lives.

So, they wrote the Declaration of Independence in which it declared the American colonies were free from Britain's rule. At the same time, it kicked out the royal governors in the states and replaced them with patriots.

Thomas Jefferson wrote most of the Declaration of Independence. Here is the beginning of this historical work. The full Declaration is in Appendix C. It is surely inspiring:

*When in the Course of human events, it becomes necessary for one people to dissolve the political bands which have connected them with another, and to assume among the powers of the earth, the separate and equal station to which*

*the Laws of Nature and of Nature's God entitle them, a decent respect to the opinions of mankind requires that they should declare the causes which impel them to the separation.*

*We hold these truths to be self-evident, that all men are created equal, that they are endowed by their Creator [1] Genesis 1:26-28 with certain unalienable Rights, that among these are Life, Liberty and the pursuit of Happiness.*

Thomas Paine, a great patriot wrote this short piece called Crisis about the events to come:

## The Crisis

by Thomas Paine, December 23, 1776

*"THESE are the times that try men's souls. The summer soldier and the sunshine patriot will, in this crisis, shrink from the service of their country; but he that stands by it now, deserves the love and thanks of man and woman. Tyranny, like hell, is not easily conquered; yet we have this consolation with us, that the harder the conflict, the more glorious the triumph. What we obtain too cheap, we esteem too lightly: it is dearness only that gives everything its value. Heaven knows how to put a proper price upon its goods; and it would be strange indeed if so celestial an article as FREEDOM should not be highly rated. Britain, with an army to enforce her tyranny, has declared that she has a right (not only to TAX) but "to BIND us in ALL CASES WHATSOEVER" and if being bound in that manner, is not slavery, then is there not such a thing as slavery upon earth. Even the expression is impious; for so unlimited a power can belong only to God...."*

## Not everybody liked being independent

Not everybody was in favor of independence. Some liked being tethered to King George III. They were the Loyalists. Those wanting independence were known as the patriots. As the war began, the

people took sides. The loyalists were not bothered by the patriots unless they spoke against the patriots or got in the way of planned initiatives.

Florida was not one of the thirteen original colonies / states. Consequently most of its people were Loyalists and they stayed loyal to Britain for a number of reasons including their idea that the British protected them from the attacks of the French, the Spanish, and American Indians.

Since slavery was the order of the day, the loyalists also feared that enslaved Africans might attack them. Britain spent a lot of money helping Florida and it bought for the Crown its loyalty.

Though the trigger for the war was the imposition of British taxes and trade regulations, the American Revolution was more than that. It was the first time in recorded history that a group of people under the control of a government fought for their independence from their own government.

The principles of independence that motivated the colonists to risk their lives and their sacred honor were universal principles such as rule of law, constitutional rights, and popular sovereignty. Many citizens in our current time have forgotten how difficult freedom was to obtain. Many others fear that if we give freedom up for expediency any time soon, we will never get it back.

## **Specifics about the Revolutionary War**

The British had many advantages in the war, such as a trained Army and Navy. They also had many loyalists who supported the British Empire. Colonists at the time viewed slaves as property and among other things, they did not like the notion proposed by Lord Dunmore to free slaves who joined the royal army.

Independent of the slavery issue, the patriots were inspired by Thomas Paine's pamphlet called Common Sense. In clear, simple language this short literary work explained the advantages of and the need for immediate independence.



You may read this work by Paine for free:  
<https://www.ushistory.org/Paine/commonsense/>

There were lots of events in the war and it lasted until 1783.

At the conclusion of this summary of the cause and the action in the Revolutionary War, you will see a comprehensive chronology of the war and the creation of America in table form. It should help in your understanding all that happened in this War of Independence. It has been provided by Ushistory.Org.

You will enjoy the great snapshot this gives of all the major events that occurred during the war—including the signing of the Declaration of Independence and the ratification of the Constitution. Once the Revolution began, it was obvious that it would take a definite smashing defeat for the American patriots to ever abandon their quest for freedom and independence.

As we all know, American colonists known as patriots won the war for all of US. Most historians credit the bravery and willingness to risk it all of the colonists, the excellent leadership of George Washington; the aid of such European nations as France; and the many tactical errors by British commanders as the significant factors that contributed to the American victory.

The British strategy called for crushing the rebellion in the North first and they almost succeeded but for the bravery of the patriots. Several times the British nearly defeated the Continental Army. This took its toll on the morale of the fighters.

Major victories at Trenton and Princeton, N.J., in late 1776 and early 1777 restored patriot hopes, and then another victory at Saratoga, N.Y. halted a major British advance from Canada, and eventually France, certainly not a friend of England's at the time, and looking for its own opportunities in the New World, intervened on behalf of the Patriots and contributed very positively in the win. .

Then, in 1778, fighting moved to the South and again Britain was successful. They captured Georgia and Charleston, S.C. and defeated an American army at Camden, S.C. However, as things were getting dire, a band of patriots began to harass loyalists and they disrupted the supply lines.

Thus, Britain failed to achieve control over the southern countryside before they were compelled to advance northward to Yorktown, Va. In the war's last major battle, in 1781, an American and French force defeated the British at Yorktown. It was all over but the agreements for peace.

At the time of the Revolution, there were about five million colonists in the New World. Not all were patriots of course. The peace came with a high price. Some of the unintended consequences of the war include the following:

About 7,200 Americans died during the battles of the Revolution. Another 10,000 died fighting the elements suffering from disease or exposure. Another 8,500 or so died in British prisons.

At least a quarter of the slaves in South Carolina and Georgia freed themselves during the Revolution. The Northern states chose to outlaw slavery outright or they adopted gradual emancipation plans.

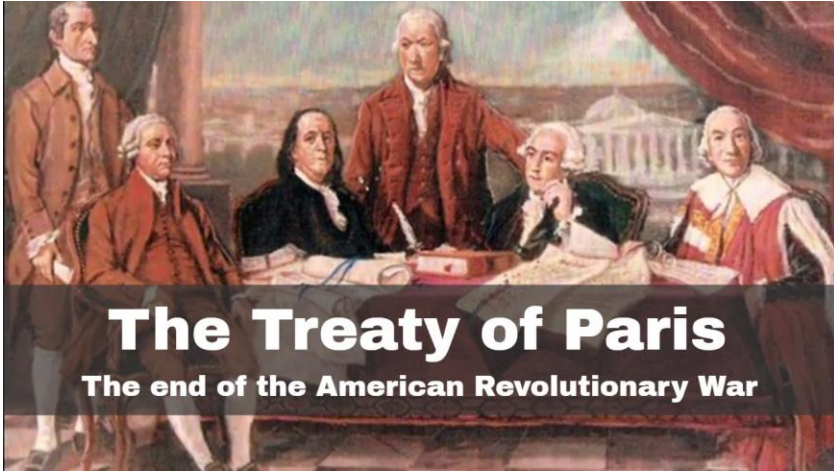
The states were no longer under British control and so they each adopted written constitutions guaranteeing freedom of speech and religious freedom. They also increased the legislature's size and powers, made taxation more progressive, and reformed inheritance laws.

The following timeline gives a blow by blow snapshot of the war. Once can purchase books at major booksellers that expand this timeline into several volumes of books.

## ***Timeline of the Revolutionary War Courtesy of Ushistory.Org***

<b>1754</b> ...	The French and Indian War ending in 1763 June 19-July 11; The Albany Congress
<b>1788</b>	June 21 U.S. Constitution adopted, when New Hampshire ratifies it

# Chapter 15 The End of the Revolutionary War



## Cornwallis Surrenders

Washington made significant progress prosecuting the War of independence. When the Continental Army arrived in Yorktown on September 26, 1783, the French Fleet, was in firm control of the bay. The French, operating under the Franco-American Alliance, had offered substantial assistance to the new United States.

They had Cornwallis pinned in. With about 20,000 troops from state militias combined with troops from France, the American forces had stymied the British who were being led by General Lord Charles Cornwallis. Cornwallis's troops were taking heavy casualties from a constant bombardment.

Cornwallis was the 2nd General in Command in the Americas, and to put it frankly, when reinforcements from New York, sent by the top General Henry Clinton, did not arrive in time to be of use, he knew he was licked and he surrendered on October 19, 1781. This was the de-facto end of the war though skirmishes continued for several years.



***Surrender Of Cornwallis- The End of the American Revolution***

In December 1783, George Washington made the end of the American Revolution official when he resigned his commission to Congress. The revolution had ended. America had achieved its independence and its representative democracy was about to get even stronger.

## **Revolutionary War Videos**

To continue your study about the Revolutionary War, the Internet is a great source of free information. If you are intrigued about the American Revolution and would like to sit back and listen to some historical tunes or watch some great videos, take your browser and type the following search phrases. There is a wealth of information at your fingertips.

- Revolutionary war
- Revolutionary war videos
- Revolutionary war tunes
- Schoolhouse Rock Kings.

The lyrics to some great patriotic songs are on the Schoolhouse Rock site if you want to print them and sing along. When you play this video on YouTube, look on the right hand frame and you will find a number of other Schoolhouse Rock productions such as "The Shot Heard Round the World." It's both a fun and uplifting experience

and even before you read the rest of this book, it can be a nice learning experience. Enjoy!

## End of War Summary

The government in the colonies was formed very much like the government in England. The Governor, the Council and the Representatives of the people made up the three branches. The Governor and the Council had their allegiance to the Colonial Proprietor or the Crown. Only the representatives could levy taxes.

When the French and Indian War and the Pontiac Wars concluded, the English Crown was looking to America to pay it back for its war costs and to pay it back for the 10,000-strong English standing army residing on American soil. Instead of doing things by their own book of laws, the English were impatient and began to directly tax the colonists but this was forbidden by the English Constitution and the Americans were subjects of the Crown, just as those living in London.

Beginning with the Stamp Act and moving to the Intolerable Acts, it was a cat and mouse game of English taxes, Colonist complaints, England concessions—until the taxes were too many to take away. The English had the strongest Navy in the world but they had just 10,000 soldiers compared to the 5,000,000 colonists.

Soon the Colonists were sick of the taxes and longed for their freedom. The thirteen colonies formed the First Continental Congress and sent King George a note of demands called the Declaration of Rights and Grievances, hoping he would lighten up. Instead the King dug in. At the Second Continental Congress the war had already begun and the delegates fashioned the Declaration of Independence as well as the Articles of Confederation upon which the Constitution was built.

George Washington was appointed commander in chief and he and the army of the new U.S. won many battles and finally in 1783, the British General Cornwallis surrendered to Washington. The U.S. came into being and was commissioned as a free country and for years the country was bound by its Articles of Confederation until the drafting and ratification of the Constitution

## **The Government of the United States**

America's founding documents tell a tale of the character and temperament of the men who are now known as the Founding Fathers. They represented the best that America had to offer. When the Articles of Confederation was introduced, it sparked lengthy debate before adoption in November 1777. This was the beginning of the government of the United States of America.

# Part V: Meaning of Founding Documents

## Chapter 16 The Forming of the United States Government



### Representation at All Levels

One of the first documents on the way to the Declaration of Independence and the Constitution was the Declaration of Rights and Grievances. It was a product of the First Continental Congress, as shown in Appendix A and discussed in prior chapters. It was the first formal request of the "United States" to England for a return to representative government.

Though nothing close to a constitutional democracy, the Colonists under English rule enjoyed representation in the lower house of the colonial governments. There was no union of colonies or states at the time and had the English kept to themselves and not levied taxes directly on the colonists, Americans today would be much more interested if Camilla is really ever going to be the Queen.

With a careful reading of the Declaration of Rights and Grievances, one can get a quick sense of what the colonists wanted from the Crown. It was simply, "no taxation without representation," and all of the many positions this plea represented. As the thought of a revolution became more of a reality for the Patriots, independence

and freedom and liberty become even more important than the tax burden.

This early declaration was the first major document of the new government of the United States, though it occurred at a time when the states were not actively seeking independence from the Crown.

The expressed purpose of the First Continental Congress

*"That a Committee be appointed to state the rights of the Colonies in general, the several instances in which these rights are violated or infringed, and the means most proper to be pursued for obtaining a restoration of them."*

The committee was constructed and the declaration was drafted and it was read on September 22nd and the draft of the grievances was read on the 24th. The members of the First Congress debated the drafts on October 12 and 13, and after a final draft was produced, it was agreed on Friday, October 14, 1774.

Several days later on October 20, the Congress passed the Articles of Association. It was addressed to King George III. In essence, it was a formal agreement of the colonies themselves to work together as an association of states with common purpose. It was basically a union of protest and boycott as many of the articles outlined the specific actions that the colonists were to take regarding the export and import of goods.

As you read these articles in Appendix B, you can't help but notice the elegance and forethought in the draft. We are a fortunate lot indeed to have had such fine and capable, and yes, honorable men, representing America in those days.

Since life had not improved and the British, after initially backing off from its impositions, began to double down, continuing to impose its will on the colonists, The Second Continental Congress began on May 10, 1775 and it went on until March 1, 1781. During the war, the meeting location was moved from Philadelphia several times to other locations to protect the lives of the representatives.



The delegates of each of the 13 colonies gathered initially in Philadelphia to discuss their next steps in dealing with England. This Congress met at the State House in Philadelphia as the American Revolution had already begun in earnest with the shot heard round the world still ringing in their ears.

The militia was still engaged in Boston while the Congress was using its powers to formally establish the militia as the Continental Army of the United States with George Washington as the top general known at the time as the Commander in Chief. This marked another stage in the formation of the government of the US. The government would continue to evolve and after Independence was gained, Washington would again become Commander in Chief when he was elected First President of the United States.

Sixty-five representatives originally appointed by the legislatures of thirteen British North American colonies accomplished a body of work that is historical in nature. At the time, it formed the basis for the new government. The Declaration of Independence, with text shown in Appendix C was the first well-known historical document produced by this Second Congress. The second was the Articles of Confederation, text shown in Appendix D. This was the pre-cursor document to the United States Constitution, the text of which is shown in Appendix E.

As noted previously, the Second Continental Congress was begun during the American Revolutionary War. It served as the de facto U.S. national government. This Congress assumed power and raised armies, directed strategy, appointed diplomats, and it made the government formal.

At the same time, it produced numerous important documents, including three of the most fundamental and historical documents to American freedom—The Declaration of Independence, The Articles of Confederation, and The Constitution.

## **United States Declaration of Independence**

Some dates, one can never forget. The Declaration of Independence was written by Thomas Jefferson, and it was put forth and approved

for printing on July 4, 1776. It did exactly what it purported to do in its title. It declared independence from Great Britain.

It was not Pennsylvania, or Massachusetts or Virginia that declared this independence and this is a key point. Instead, it was all of the thirteen colonies in unison, known to themselves as states at the time. They had chosen to assemble and join in a union to create a new federal government that would be known as the United States of America.

Once independence was declared, America began to legally operate fully independent of the Crown with its own government. Considering that the colonists were in revolt and war had commenced, it is an understatement to suggest that the colonists were not operating independently prior to the Declaration. The Declaration formalized their union of independence.

The states were declared to be free and independent and "all political connection between them and the State of Great Britain, is and ought to be totally dissolved." The formal title of the document ratified on July 4, 1776 is the "**Unanimous Declaration of the thirteen United States of America**," but to Americans it is known simply as the *Declaration of Independence*. This was the formal end of the thirteen colonies.

In addition to declaring independence, this document gave justification for the separation from the Crown in sufficient detail that the King and Parliament could not misunderstand its purpose and from whence it came. Since the colonies were no more, historians consider this Declaration as the founding document of the United States of America. In his Gettysburg Address of 1863, at the beginning of his address, President Lincoln memorialized the founding of the United States in these words:

*Four score and seven years ago our fathers brought forth on this continent, a new nation, conceived in liberty, and dedicated to the proposition that all men are created equal.*

As we know from our knowledge of American History and from the recount of the Revolutionary War provided in past chapters, there were a number of battles until the Americans prevailed in the war

with England. After the *Declaration of Independence*, the Second Continental Congress stayed in session passing laws and drafting documents that ultimately would define the new nation as the United States of America. The next major document in the formation of the government of the United States to be examined in this book is known as *The Articles of Confederation*

## Articles of Confederation

Just as the Declaration of Independence is short for a longer title, the "Articles of Confederation and Perpetual Union" has been shortened over time to be simply The Articles of Confederation. Some say that the Articles of Confederation represent the United States of America's first Constitution. This document was the work of the Second Continental Congress, who drafted it in 1777. The Articles established a "firm league of friendship" between and among the 13 states.

After having been subjected to the wiles of the strong central government of the British prior to the War of Independence, these Articles reflect a sense of the wariness by the states of a government that would not provide them with their God-given rights.

The Articles are the agreed-upon remedy for the concerns of states' rights and for individual rights. Ever fearful that a government of the future (such as the current regime or one hence) might not have the right measure of concern for our individual needs if it were given too much power, and that abuses such as the Intolerable Acts, might again be the result, the Articles purposely established a "constitution."

This document vested the largest share of power to the individual states. When the Constitution was built and later enacted, it reflected the same notion of states' rights and individual rights, as the Articles, and the last claimant on the rights list was the federal government in Washington.

Under the Articles of Confederation, each of the states retained its "sovereignty, freedom and independence." The preamble of the US Constitution drafted in 1787 and ratified later by the individual

states one at a time, sets its purpose as "in order to form a more perfect union."

The founders of our government recognized that there were flaws in the Articles of Confederation that would more easily permit a tyranny to take place. And, so their best, "more perfect" work, the Constitution, was its way of correcting those flaws and correcting the notion of a constitutional representative democracy (aka, a Republic) for the United States.

There was a permanent institution called the Congress formed in the Articles as a national legislature comprised of representatives of the states. The Congress was responsible for conducting foreign affairs, declaring war or peace, maintaining an army and navy and a variety of other lesser functions.

The Articles did not call for the separation of powers with an executive, legislative, and judicial branch. The Articles did not permit the delegates to collect taxes, regulate interstate commerce and enforce laws. Under the Articles of Confederation these important functions could only be performed if the states agreed.

Though the Articles had shortcomings, the document provided the guidelines for the United States government and it was the only real law of the land until the Constitution was adopted and ratified.

Eventually, the shortcomings were addressed and this led to the U.S. Constitution. The beauty of the Articles of Confederation was that it provided a workable framework during those years in which the 13 states were struggling to achieve their independent status.

Considering that the Constitution itself is under fire today by those who would like it constructed in ways that were not intended by the Founding Fathers, from November 15, 1777, when adopted by the Congress, the Articles of Confederation did their job to keep the Country in good stead. Nothing in life worth having is easy.

On March 1, 1781, the Articles became operational when the last of the thirteen states signed the document. Then came the work for the Constitution.

# Chapter 17 The Constitution, An Awesome Document



## Introduction to the Constitution

The Articles were an imperfect constitution for the newly formed union. The phrase "a more perfect union" in the Preamble notes the imperfections in the document and it introduces the rationale for the drawing of the Constitution

The U.S. Constitution (and its subsequent 27 amendments) has survived for over two-hundred years testifying to its perfection as the basis for the constitutional representative democracy of the United States as we will further discuss in the Civics Lessons in coming chapters.

On June 21, 1788, 234 years ago, the Constitution became the official framework of the government of the United States of America when New Hampshire became the ninth of 13 states to ratify it. The journey to ratification, however, as history shows, was a long and arduous process.

## From the National Archives:

<http://www.archives.gov/national-archives-experience/charters/constitution.html>

I like how this text from the national archives reads so instead of trying to rephrase this, I simply include it below to explain the purpose of the work behind the Constitution.

*The Federal Convention convened in the State House (Independence Hall) in Philadelphia on May 14, 1787, to revise the Articles of Confederation. Because the delegations from only two states were at first present, the members adjourned from day to day until a quorum of seven states was obtained on May 25. Through discussion and debate it became clear by mid-June that, rather than amend the existing Articles, the Convention would draft an entirely new frame of government.*

*All through the summer, in closed sessions, the delegates debated, and redrafted the articles of the new Constitution. Among the chief points at issue were how much power to allow the central government, how many representatives in Congress to allow each state, and how these representatives should be elected--directly by the people or by the state legislators. The work of many minds, the Constitution stands as a model of cooperative statesmanship and the art of compromise.*

## **The Law of the Land**

As noted previously, the Constitution of the United States comprises the primary law of the U.S. Federal Government. In simple terms it is the law of the land and all other laws must conform to the statutes with this original document and its amendments (changes).

It also describes the three chief branches of the Federal Government and their jurisdictions as well as the separation of the powers. In addition, it lays out the basic rights of citizens of the United States. The Constitution of the United States is the oldest federal constitution in existence and was framed by a convention of delegates from twelve of the thirteen original states in Philadelphia in May 1787.

The Constitution is the landmark legal document of the United States and all other laws are tested against its specifications. Many other constitutions, such as the Constitution of Mexico, for example are based on this work.

The full Constitution is included in Appendix E. The Bill of Rights (first ten amendments) and the other 17 amendments are in Appendix F, and those Amendments that were submitted but not passed are shown in Appendix G. To give the reader an appreciation or a reminder of just how significant the Articles and the Amendments of this document really are, I am including this brief summary below:

## Preamble

*We the People of the United States, in Order to form a more perfect Union, establish Justice, insure domestic Tranquility, provide for the common defense, promote the general Welfare, and secure the Blessings of Liberty to ourselves and our Posterity, do ordain and establish this Constitution for the United States of America.*

## Article I: The Legislative Branch: Consists of 10 sections and defines:

(1) All Legislative powers, (2) Composition of the House of Representatives, (3) Composition of the Senate, (4) Holding Elections, (5) Congress sets its own rules by House, (6) Compensation for Senators, (7) Revenue Bills originate in House, (8) Congress can lay and collect taxes, (9) Defines states' rights and taxes (10) State treaties.

Section 9, Clause 8 of the Constitution is of particular interest to this writer. In later chapters we discuss the automatic conferring of the title, the Honorable. Please look at what the founding fathers thought of such titles:

*Section 9 Clause 8: No Title of Nobility shall be granted by the United States: And no Person holding any Office of Profit or Trust under them, shall, without the Consent of the Congress, accept of any present, Emolument, Office, or Title, of any kind whatever, from any King, Prince, or foreign State.*

One of the first constitutional loopholes was the notion of the giver being the King, Prince, or a foreign state. There is nothing here unfortunately about taking the title (“Honorable”) for oneself or having it granted via obscure rules of etiquette that have never passed the test of law.

**Article II: The Executive Branch Consists of 4 sections and defines:**

(1) Executive Power and President, (2) President as Commander in Chief, (3) State of the Union & Information Requirements, (4) Rules of Executive Branch impeachment

**Article III: The Judicial Branch: Consists of 3 sections and defines:**

(1) Judicial Power, (2) Laws and Trial by Jury, (3) Treason

**Article IV: Relations Between States: Consists of 4 sections and defines:**

(1) Faith and Credit of State Laws, (2) Privileges apply to all in all states, (3) New States May be Admitted to the Union, (4) Federal guarantee to defend states.

**Article V: The Amendment Process: Consists of 1 section and defines the Amendment Process for adding / deleting from the Constitution.**

**Article VI: General Provisions, Supremacy of the Constitution: Consists of 1 section and defines the debt process and the requirement to support the Constitution**



**Article VII:** Ratification Process: Consists of 1 section and it outlines the process for ratifying the Constitution

## 27 Amendments to the Constitution

### The Bill of Rights

**Amendment I:** Freedom of speech, religion, press, petition, assembly.

**Amendment II:** Right to bear arms and militia.

**Amendment III:** Quartering of soldiers.

**Amendment IV:** Warrants and searches.

**Amendment V:** Individual debt and double jeopardy.

**Amendment VI:** Speedy trial, witnesses and accusations.

**Amendment VII:** Right for a jury trial.

**Amendment VIII:** Bail and fines.

**Amendment IX:** Existence of other rights for the people

**Amendment X:** Power reserved to the states and people.

### Later Amendments

**Amendment XI:** Suits against states.

**Amendment XII:** Election of executive branch.

**Amendment XIII:** Prohibition of slavery.

**Amendment XIV:** Privileges or immunities, due process, elections and debt: Consists of 5 sections and defines: (1) Citizenship (2) Apportionment of representatives among the states, (3) Rules for being a Senator or Representative, (4) Validity of the public debt, (5) Congressional Enforcement of this Article.

**Amendment XV:** Race and the right to vote.

**Amendment XVI:** Income tax.

**Amendment XVII:** Senator election and number.

**Amendment XVIII:** Prohibition on sale of alcohol

**Amendment XIX:** Gender and the right to vote.

**Amendment XX:** "Lame duck" session of Congress eliminated.

**Amendment XXI:** Repeal of Amendment XVIII (Prohibition).

**Amendment XXII:** Limit of Presidential terms.

**Amendment XXIII:** Election rules for the District of Columbia

**Amendment XXIV:** Taxes and the right to vote.

**Amendment XXV:** Rules of Presidential succession.

**Amendment XXVI:** Age and the right to vote.

## **Amendment XXVII: Pay raises and Congress**

# **Amendments Never Ratified**

Besides the above summary of the constitutional body of law, six other amendments have been proposed to the constitution that have not been ratified and thus do not represent the law of the land. The entire text of these amendments is included in Appendix F.

## **What Does This Mean?**

Here we are in Chapter 15 of a book to help all Americans understand the USA and its government. We have examined the founding and the revolution and the articles and precepts in the Constitution as the primary law of the land. This more or less completes the historical section of this book, though there will be citations in later parts of the book referencing the founding documents.

We will have a civics lesson and then we will be examining representation or the lack thereof in subsequent chapters. So far, we have more than hinted at the major culprits to the dilemma, which is a major theme of any book about America—Taxation Without Representation.

Taxation was a major problem for the colonists and the representatives of the Second Congress, even during the war did not have taxing authority. There was never a welfare state. Every buck that a colonist earned could theoretically be kept since the state's mission was not to provide for the welfare of others. The Constitution does not provide for redistribution of income.

## **No Bucks Required**

Actually colonists did not ever get to spend bucks per se. The thirteen colonies retained the British monetary units for years:

pounds, shillings, pence. Besides barter, the colonists also used foreign coins made of precious metals (gold, silver).

These were in circulation in the colonies and their values were determined by the several colonial legislatures. The dollar coin (or buck as we call it) was used even before the Declaration of Independence.

The Congress had authorized the issuance of dollar denominated coins and currency. The term 'dollar' was a natural since the most commonly used coins at that time was something called the Spanish colonial 8 reales dollar coins. Since Britain would not permit the colonies to mint their own coins, these fit the bill fine. They were also known as Spanish Milled Dollars.

*Figure 5-1 Colonial Currency*



**Types of New England currency, including a Massachusetts bill of 1690, earliest paper money issued in America. It's not your eyes.**

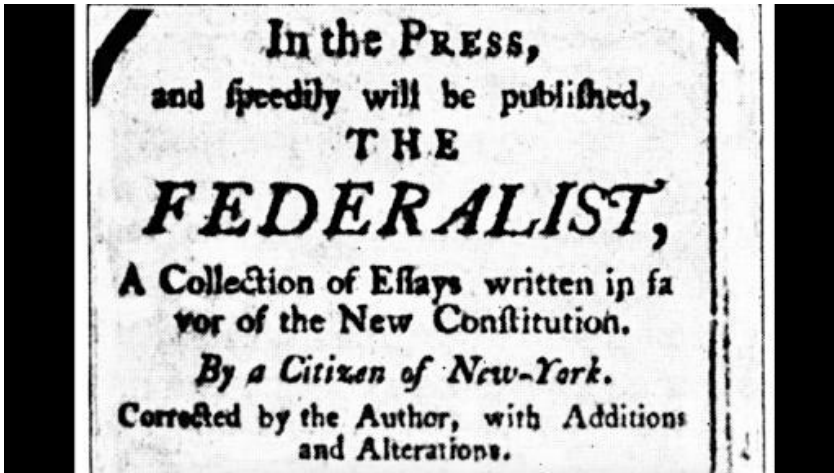
Several different systems of money were proposed for the early United States. The dollar eventually was approved by Congress in 1786. The first US dollar bill was not printed as legal tender, however, until 1862.

Though there is nothing in the Constitution about income redistribution, a basic tenet of our current welfare system, the Constitution is the document that we can credit or blame for giving the government the right to tax the people of their wealth. The Constitution is also the current body of law that gives us our constitutional democracy and thus with this democracy we have a representative government.

Americans who read this paragraph should like the founders even more. The founders did not include an income tax in the Constitution and thus it was illegal for Congress to collect such a tax. However, on February 3, 1913, hard as it is to believe, the people of the US in 36 states approved the 16th Amendment to the Constitution providing the government with permission to levy an Income Tax on the people and on corporations. And shortly after that came the IRS.

The founders of the country had no idea that even with the three branches of government representing the people and serving as a system of checks and balances, there would be thieving and conniving representatives in all branches and levels of government who now have the authority to take as much as 1/2 of the income of a middle class American and even more if that American is self-employed.

# Chapter 18 Introduction to the Federalist Papers #1



## Should Americans read The Federalist Papers?

Most readers already know that America is in peril; yet many Americans choose not to believe this is the case. For those who see it as it is, tyranny in our highest federal offices, it would help to reread the Declaration of Independence and the Constitution, included in this book, and then to crawl into the pure minds of our Founders, who never expected corruption to interfere with the many checks and balances they had prepared for America and had written into the Constitution and the Bill of Rights.

To help US in our cause, we need the Federalist Papers today more than ever. In this way, we can all understand the basis of our freedoms in the Constitution. Perhaps we need the anti-Federalist papers even more so that we can fully understand the cracks in our liberty.

Fixing cracks is much easier when you know where they are. With the president or dictator scare that Americans have been experiencing since 2009, we need to patch our government the first chance we get in the future.

## Reading the Federalist Papers

I finally read the Federalist Papers after having put them on my list several years ago. I finished paper # 85 several months ago, and then I set about organizing them into a small footprint and an affordable reprint so all Americans could learn as I did. My edition of the Federalist Papers along with parts of this introduction is included in a book titled: *The Federalist Papers by Hamilton, Jay, and Madison*. Like this book, it was available at Amazon.com and will be available again if Amazon is forced by the courts to reinstate my account.

The founders wrote the 85 papers—specifically, Hamilton, Madison, & Jay. . I corrected some typos and chopped up their huge paragraphs into smaller ones to make the papers much easier to read.

There is a lot of work required for all of US to be able to enjoy freedom through the ages. My purpose in writing this introduction to the Federalist Papers for the book, is to help frame an argument to the American people for why it is still critical for all of US to read The Federalist Papers and our founding documents—even today long after the papers had convinced the country to adopt the US Constitution.

Ironically, most of my life, I had never even heard of the Federalist Papers. I presume the same is the case for many other Americans. It is time we all correct that for our national well-being.

From grade school through high school through college, the papers were never on any teacher of mine's agenda. In addition to civics and history classes in grade school, high school and college, like most Americans, I had long ago read the Declaration of Independence, the Articles of Confederation, and the Constitution. These gave me insights into the founding of the country and what the US is all about. Consequently, I believed that I had a fundamental understanding of how America was supposed to work. From these readings, I actually thought I knew it all pretty well.

I was wrong about that. It is not that my perceptions from what I had learned through the founding documents were wrong; it is that they were incomplete. I first tuned-in to the fact that the Federalist

Papers existed and had great value about eleven years ago, when I wrote my first patriotic / political book titled, *Taxation without Representation*. This book has been updated and is in a subsequent edition. Just as the hard copy of this book, along with other patriotic / political books, it will be available again at Amazon when my account is reinstated.

Having read about the Federalist Papers and now having read them, and having read some dissenting views on the topic, I am convinced that we Americans need to understand the Federalist Papers today as much as the people of America in the late 1780's when the Constitution was being debated.

According to the late Richard B. Morris, a 20<sup>th</sup> century historian—the Federalist Papers serve as an *"incomparable exposition of the Constitution, a classic in political science unsurpassed in both breadth and depth by the product of any later American writer."* Morris is well known by historians for his pioneering work in colonial American legal history and the early history of American labor.

Thomas Jefferson called *The Federalist Papers* the best commentary on the principles of government, which ever was written. Over 200 years after the writing of these articles and essays, most commentators — liberal and conservative alike — still agree.

It is time that all Americans begin to read these works, and with dispatch, because we as a people no longer know if our President is serving US or breaking the law to serve his personal ideology.

Though it is difficult to read the Federalist Papers since they use the English language distinctly from the 1700's, with words and sentence structures, of which most of US are not accustomed, it is still a worthwhile endeavor. It certainly won't hurt US; that is for sure. The way the papers are composed is exactly how the educated spoke in the eighteenth century.

Consequently for those of us living in the 21st century, the papers appear archaic and can be difficult to follow. Nothing worthwhile in life is easy. I can assure you that after reading several of these papers, they do become easier to comprehend. In any case, they are

a fine challenge for the human mind. How could these old-timers have been so smart? Yet, they were!

Our language is simpler today and it may be tough for some to traverse these papers, and their long sentences, while remaining awake. Nonetheless, they are phenomenal learning pieces and all of US can and should take the time to read the originals and gain insights about the US, and how our government is supposed to function. Along with other founding documents, the entire 85 papers are included in the book previously mentioned.

Without changing its composition, I corrected spelling errors, and I broke up many long paragraphs to make the works much more readable. This work, though corrected and more readable, is unabridged because I did not shorten any of the Papers. They are all intact.

## **Understand the Founders' Intentions**

I call your attention to the fact that the current administration in Washington is failing in its adherence to the Constitution, and that is why it is so critical now that we understand the precepts of the Constitution by reading the Federalist Papers. These papers show the Founders' intentions on the clauses and the amendments in the Bill of rights.

We all need a solid footing from which we can select our new legislators. Many view the current crop as mostly self-absorbed politicians, who have abandoned US and, who instead operate on behalf of their political parties, their lobbyists, and their cronies.

We the People have been left behind. When we hear that the administration is lawless, without understanding the basic precepts of the Supreme Law of the land, we are stuck with no benchmark for the truth. The US Constitution is that benchmark, and the Federalist Papers are the citizens' gateway to fully understanding its meaning.



## Constitution & the Philadelphia Convention

A number of states had sent detailed written plans for the Constitution along with their delegates to the Constitutional Convention in Philadelphia. The Convention began on May 25, 1787 and lasted until September 17, 1787. It was convened at the State House in Philadelphia. Most of us know the State House today as Independence Hall.

After three months of work, James Madison, a prolific writer, put out his rough draft of the Constitution. Madison's "Virginia Plan" as it was called, became the basis upon which the Constitution was developed. After about another month of tweaking, the final work was completed.

On September 17, 1787, the state delegates approved the Constitution in its final form, completed their work and sent the document back to the individual states to be ratified. They then adjourned the convention.

## Convincing the Public

The commencing of the Federalist Papers began shortly thereafter. The writing of the papers was commissioned by Alexander Hamilton, who knew he could not write them all. He and James Madison, and John Jay together wrote The Federalist Papers to defend and explain the newly drafted Federal Constitution, and to promote its ratification in the state of New York.

All of the papers were written as essays, such as this introduction, but when published they became articles in NY newspapers / magazines. Because New York at the time and to this day is a huge and prosperous state, their being published in NY was very important to the ratification of the Constitution. Thus for the writers, it was the major object of their attention at the time.

Along the way, John Jay became ill after writing just four of the papers. When he became well, he came back to write one more. The other eighty essays were written by Hamilton and Madison.

These articles were published without tribute in New York City newspapers, and I would bet the newspapers sold better when one of them was included. From October 1787 to August 1788, all eighty-five articles appeared under the pseudonym “Publius,” in various NY media outlets. Publius was the perfect pseudonym as he was the legendary founder of the Roman Republic and “friend of the people.”

At the same time, those who had deep concerns about the value of the Constitution separately wrote what today are known as the Anti-Federalist Papers. It is good to review them also as their focus was the potential for tyranny in the governing structure. These offerings are as patriotic as the Federalist Papers with which they vehemently disagreed.

Ironically in the 21st century, for the first time in my lifetime, we are now seeing the tyranny, which was the subject of the Anti-Federalist papers. It is coming from both our Congress and from our chief executive.

It surely would be nice if it were not so. Understanding what the law is and what is not the law of the land is therefore more important than ever for Americans, and that is why I commenced this work.

As noted, the original essays were written for the common man of the day. In New York, three popular print media outlets chose to publish and profit from them. These were the Independent Journal; the New-York Packet; and the Daily Advertiser. The idea was that such men would have an influence on their representatives after the convention, which had approved the Constitution.

Before the Constitution took effect, the US had been using a government formed under the Articles of Confederation. Most scholars of the day noted that the Articles had become ineffective in handling the affairs of an independent and growing nation.

Some, who were labeled as Anti-Federalists, believed that a mere tweaking of the Articles of Confederation was all that was needed to make them right. However, at the convention, the state’s delegates changed the government almost completely by offering the new Constitution and its precepts as the way to move forward.

And, so, Hamilton in his kickoff message in the last Federalist Paper # 85, written almost a year after the Constitution had been completed, offered this simple caution to the country:

A nation without a national government is, in my view, an awful spectacle. “--Alexander Hamilton, The Federalist Papers, No. 85.”

## **US Constitution – Worth Explaining and Defending**

Not too long after the Revolutionary War, the Founders realized that the government established by the Articles of Confederation was not working perfectly. In fact, that is an understatement. It became obvious to most patriots that America needed a new form of government. It had to be strong enough to maintain national unity over a large geographic area, but it also had to be balanced so as not to become so strong that it would become a tyranny on the people.

In the year 2022, concerns for tyranny with many Marxist Democrats in high government positions is more of an issue today than ever before in our country’s history.

The guiding formula for the operation of the US government from the revolution onward came from the Declaration of Independence (June 1776), and the Articles of Confederation (Ratified by Maryland, the 13th state in January 1781). Besides these imperfect documents, in order to form a more perfect union, the framers researched many other different forms of government.

Their main sources of ideas in altering the American plan of government included works from Ancient Greece and Rome, English history, as well as major European philosophers such as John Locke, Jean Jacques Rousseau, and Baron de Montesquieu. These philosophers are quoted many times in the essays put forth in the Federalist Papers.

Despite their best effort, the framers were unable to find an exact model to suit the needs of what they viewed as America's unique situation. To solve the problem of an imperfect foundation for the government as expressed in the “Articles of Confederation,” when

the states' delegates met in May 1787, their intention was to use the Articles and the result of their research and their collective thoughts, to form a government to meet the new country's needs.

Additionally, they were prepared to interject their own ideas based on their governing experience from the time shortly after the Revolution. It helps to remember that Washington could have been King if he had chosen but instead he refused. Our first President was elected in 1789, just two years after our Constitution was initially approved.

Washington loved the Constitution and never chose to violate it even in its infancy stages. He knew he was the most powerful man in America long before he became President but he loved the notion of America and worked for our greater good.

Though charged with merely creating an enhancement to the Articles of Confederation, the framers went much further and as noted previously, they created a new form of government that was to operate under the newly minted United States Constitution.

In forming the original government known as the Union—based on the Articles of Confederation, all of the thirteen original states were required to ratify the plan. For the Constitution, it was deemed that before it took effect, it would need to be ratified / approved by at least nine of the thirteen colonies, which by then had become known as “states.” They were then all part of America, though theoretically at least, our first President under the Constitution, George Washington had yet to be elected.

The rationale as I see it (that not all states needed to concur) is because the country was already a country from the time all thirteen states had signed up to be part of the USA. The Articles of Confederation was a great work and it got the government moving in the right direction, but as the Federalist Papers prove, it needed improvement.

Who was running the country from 1776 after the Revolution until 1789 when Washington was elected? Well, this may come as a surprise but John Hanson, a Revolutionary War patriot, was the first US President, and there were seven other presidents before Washington.

The Founders reset the government with the Constitution and began to count presidents from that point on. Yet, America had eight presidents before Washington. The most well-known of the eight presidents; was John Hancock. At the time, Washington was in Congress.

Thomas Jefferson, James Madison, Thomas Paine, John Adams, Alexander Hamilton, and to an extent George Washington are the major figures responsible for the writing and putting of the Constitution into its final form. When the state delegates signed the Constitution on September 17, 1787, they all knew ratification would not be easy.

Many were bitterly opposed to the proposed new system of government. Even today, one can search the Web and get many hits about the Anti-Federalist Papers. They were written in the spirit of debate, not tyranny. Their point was to provide less power to the central government. Their concern was that the Constitution did not 100% assure that a tyrant could never become King of the US. Many alert citizens are concerned about the same thing today.

Shortly after its approval at the Convention, A public debate erupted in each of the states over whether the new Constitution should be accepted. This was a crucial debate on the future of the United States.

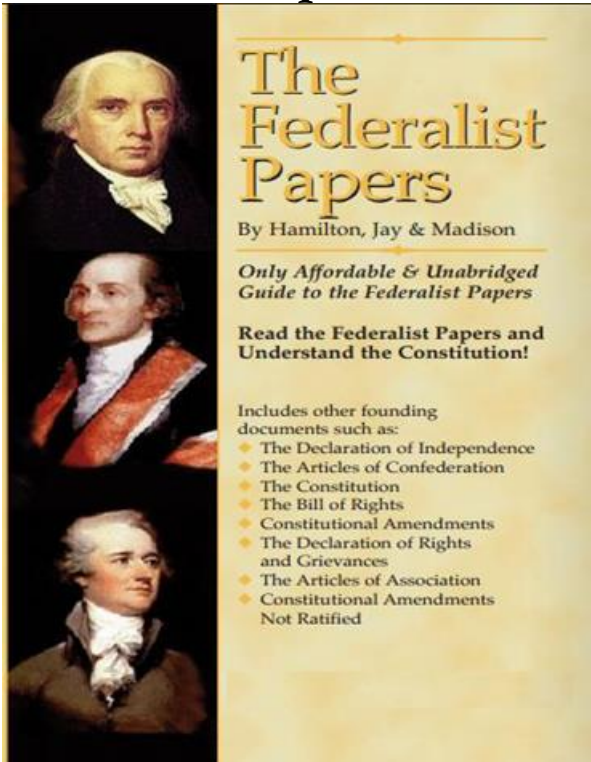
The Federalist Papers, written by Alexander Hamilton, John Jay, and James Madison answered the debated questions as posed by the opposition in great detail while copious detractors wrote their own essays / articles in rebuttal. Many were published in the press so to offer other thoughts on such an important issue. Today's press, unfortunately are corrupt. They favor the socialist progressives and they do not operate on behalf of the people's interests.

At the time they wrote the papers, the three "Publius" authors were focused just on the state of New York, and they did not submit their works to other states for publishing or review.

Yet, these patriotic and historical articles / essays made their way across all thirteen states and ultimately were a major reason why the Constitution was ratified, one state at a time.



## Chapter 19 Introduction to the Federalist Papers #2



### **New York was the battleground state.**

Nowhere was the furor over the proposed Constitution in the few states of the US more intense than in New York. Governor George Clinton was very concerned that the state's influence would be compromised at the Convention. The legislature selected State Supreme Court Judge Robert Yates and John Lansing, Speaker of the NY Assembly; to attend the convention. Both were well known Anti-Federalists. Their selection was seen by many as a way for New York to be able to outvote Alexander Hamilton.

When the notion of a new government and not a revision of the Articles of Confederation became the obvious intention of the majority of delegates, even before it was completed, Anti-Federalists Yates and Lansing pulled up their tents and went back to NY in disgust. Neither wanted anything to do with the new Constitution as it was shaping up in Philadelphia. After four months of effort, and

within days after it was signed, the Constitution therefore became the subject of widespread criticism in the New York press.

There were those, such as Yates and Lansing, whose opposition to the new document was based on their view that the Constitution diminished the rights that Americans had won in the Revolution. The Federalist Papers presented a view that this was not true while the Anti-Federalist Papers, also displayed in popular newspapers of the day, presented a view that the Constitution was bad for America and offered its specific notions.

Alexander Hamilton, one of America's finest patriots, became fearful that the cause for the Constitution might be lost in his home state of New York. This was his purpose in putting together the Federalist Papers. The Anti-Federalists saw Hamilton's effort as "selling" his ideas and to this day, various Anti-Federalist writers still mock it as one of the greatest marketing stunts of all time.

When anybody tries to convince anybody else of something, it can be mocked as salesmanship. Without Hamilton's determined sales approach however, today our country might be a monarchy or a dictatorship, or worse.

Hamilton was a brilliant lawyer, and an accomplished writer. He loved the notions built into the new Constitution. It was no surprise that he came forward almost immediately after the signing to defend the new Constitution. Earlier, when he took off for Philadelphia to attend the Convention, nobody really knew that he was to become the only New Yorker to have signed the Constitution.

As noted, the other New York delegates were not happy about the model for the new government, and so they angrily left the Convention before it was completed. Yet, the delegates from most of the thirteen states at the convention, none of which, other than perhaps Virginia, were as powerful as New York, chose to pass the Constitution on to ratification. They were convinced that the rights of the people were not being abandoned, and they did not really care what New Yorkers thought.

Hamilton himself was very much in favor of strengthening the central government. Thankfully, all of his ideas were not adopted. His original notion of a Constitution would have called for a



president elected for life with the power to appoint state governors. As much as I admire Hamilton, that sounds a lot like the current president's wishes.

As much as conservatives may admire Hamilton in his deeds, his thoughts, such as this were a different matter. Hamilton soon backed away from these ideas, and concluded that the Constitution, as written mostly by Madison, and not with all of the Hamiltonian precepts for which he had originally lobbied, was the best one possible.

Hamilton published his first "Federalist" essay in the New York Independent Journal on October 27, 1787. For historical accuracy, I report that Hamilton soon recruited two others, namely James Madison and John Jay, to contribute essays to the series. As previously noted, He, John Jay, and James Madison signed each of the articles with the Roman name "Publius." (The use of pseudonyms by writers on public affairs was a common practice.)

James Madison, sometimes called the Father of the Constitution, had played a major role during the Philadelphia Convention. As a delegate from Virginia, he participated actively in the debates. He also kept detailed notes of the proceedings and drafted much of the Constitution.

Unlike Hamilton and Madison, John Jay of New York had not been a delegate to the Constitutional Convention. A judge and diplomat, he was serving as secretary of foreign affairs in the national government when enlisted by Hamilton to write his essays.

Between October 1787 and August 1788, "Publius" wrote 85 essays as articles in several New York newspapers. Hamilton wrote over 60 percent of these essays and helped with the writing of others. Madison wrote about a third of them with Jay composing the rest (5).

The essays had an immediate impact on the ratification debate in New York and in the other states. When you read them, you will see how convincing they are.

The demand for reprints was so great that one New York newspaper publisher printed the essays together in two volumes entitled The

Federalist, A Collection of Essays, Written in Favor of the New Constitution, By a Citizen of New York. By this time the identity of "Publius," never a well-kept secret, was pretty well known.

The "Federalist" book, edited by Kelly, provides this two-part introduction in addition to the full 85 articles as written by the Founders and our nation's precious founding documents. These include the Declaration of Independence and the Constitution. As you know from reading so far, it introduces an amazing set of essays that only great American patriots could have written. God Bless America. Thank you Kate Smith!

The Federalist, also called The Federalist Papers, has served two very different purposes in American history. The 85 essays succeeded in helping to persuade doubtful New Yorkers (as well as the public in the other states), despite the well written efforts of the Anti-Federalists, to ratify the Constitution.

Today, The Federalist Papers help US to more clearly understand what the writers of the Constitution had in mind when they drafted this amazing document more than 200 years ago.

## **Important questions re USA: our democratic republic**

Where did the idea of the US government structure come from? Have you ever wondered how our government came to be? Have you ever wondered why there is a Constitution and why that is important to our being a nation of free people with liberty and justice for all? Why are there certain precepts written into our Constitution and not written into the Constitutions of other "democracies" in other countries?

The Federalist Papers explain the climate of our new nation by exploring all of the persuasive arguments for adopting the new Constitution and the need of a strong federal government that provides the final power to the people.

The tenets of the Federalist Papers are just as pertinent today as they were at the beginning of our nation. To understand what and who

we are as Americans... not just as individuals but as a society, a citizenry... it's necessary to understand the intent of our Founding Fathers.

When you do that by reading the Federalist Papers in this package, or any other, or by downloading the free versions to your own stationery or portable unit, you are on your way to understanding this great republic. Together with other founding documents, the changes in the world—technology, etc. can still be seen through the eyes of the Founders. This reading will open your eyes, and it is especially necessary today to open all of our eyes to prevent our government from stealing our lives.

The Federalist Papers are a very important tool for understanding the meaning of our Constitution and they demonstrate that its relevance is based on something much deeper. The authors of the essays knew that the principles of our founding would not always be unquestioned. So, in the papers, they gave us the strongest defense of those principles as part of the immediate political struggle for ratification.

The Federalist Papers not only illuminate the meaning of the Constitution's text; they also explain how our Constitution embodies the core principles of the Declaration of Independence and why it must be preserved, especially in the face of present struggle.

Over 100 years ago, according to most historians including Matthew Spalding of the Heritage Foundation, “progressive thinkers sought to ‘re-found’ America according to ideas alien to Washington, Adams, Jefferson, Hamilton and Madison.”

“Repudiating the Founders' belief in the existence of self-evident truths, progressives saw only relative values. Similarly, they claimed, man enjoys no permanent rights endowed by God, only changing rights held at the indulgence of government.”

The progressives have yet to destroy America though they are trying very hard to do so. Despite our contemporary challenges, we still enjoy a great measure of the original constitutional freedoms as delivered kindly by the Founders.

More importantly, through this work, the Founders have left US with their teaching and their example, showing us the way to restore our Constitution to its rightful place in America.

Our Constitution is built to endure unless good men choose to act as godless men. It will endure only if our leaders understand why it is defensible, and we can convince them or find others to defend it. There is no better argument in favor of the Constitution than *The Federalist Papers*.

We the People, when we learn or begin to fully understand what our rights have always been; will become convinced that each of us has the right to demand that our legislators adhere to our demands. If they choose not to do so, regardless of to which party they belong, it is time to call them home and bring on a patriotic representative who espouses freedom, to serve US.

Americans too often forget the work of our Founders in establishing our freedoms. We all know how our forefathers in WWI and in WWII fought to preserve freedoms—life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness. These are the freedoms established through the revolution, which have been preserved by many wars at a great cost of human life.

The Founders did not want this country to endure the malfeasance from which it now suffers. The same type of bad policies that motivated them to come to America and establish the USA as a new country should now motivate all Americans to understand our founding, and our inherent right to liberty, freedom, and justice—before it is too late.

The Founders were surely not from America. They came from other countries to have a better life and to form a new country that would be better for all the American people for years to come.

Like you, I absolutely love America and the more I read about our history, the more impressed I am about these wonderful patriots who, with quill pens and huge brains forged documents to guide US forever.

Though presidents may possess pens and phones, and they may think that their opinions, rather than laws matter the most, when

they create their own laws and choose not to enforce the laws of the nation, their actions are unconstitutional. It is forbidden.

This is exactly why Americans must read the Federalist Papers and understand the Constitution to know how wrong-headed this thinking is. This is exactly what the Founders cautioned US about. One man's pen and a phone cannot be how our country's government work is accomplished or we have no Constitution, and thus, we have no rights!

I think it is logical to conclude that the Founders and the framers did a great job or else few freedom-lovers would be here today. Can you imagine how long it took for them to write down their great thoughts in the implements of their day? How good are you at printing legibly with a quill pen and a bottle of ink?

I admit that until I read the Federalist Papers, I did not know what was on their minds and what their options were as they created the short document for US freedom known as the Constitution. Apparently at least one high government official of today, once a constitutional professor, does not fully understand the intention of founding documents; or he simply chooses to ignore them—at great peril to Americans.

It is imperative that all Americans reintroduce ourselves to the meaning of freedom and liberty and how it is preserved in our great Constitution. We must always assure that neither a single president, nor conspiring members of our Congress ever grow powerful enough to steal our freedom from US. Americans must pay attention or bad things can and will happen.

The reality is that when compared against the thoughts of the Founders, as placed in the Constitution and explained in the Federalist Papers, an individual president is nothing and cannot change our structure of government, even if he chooses to make attempts. Eventually, such a president will fail.

The Founders provided the basis so that what we do is up to US, and not the government. Presidents are not Kings. America has the best government in the world. We have no reason to change it. But, we must stay alert and continually vote scoundrels out of office so they do not change America in a fundamental way.

Because the Founders anticipated that there might be presidents such as the current executive, and his historical friends, FDR, and Wilson, along with other socialist progressives, who place government ahead of God, they put clauses into the Constitution and the Bill of Rights to protect US.

We must know about these in order to be protected. The Founders worried mostly about a tyranny brought forth by a government gone bad—more than anything else. Therefore, they created the best Constitution ever. They wrote down the rules of behavior, and they gave the power to the people, not the government.

Presidents most certainly know the rules, even if they choose not to abide by them. Despite having taken an oath of office in which they swear that they will defend all of the laws in the spirit of the Constitution, when a divided Congress chooses not to reign in presidential power, the result is tyranny.

All Americans worry about how to make this administration adhere to the precepts emblazoned in our Constitution. Americans are not prepared to relinquish freedom and liberty just so that an elected president can behave as a King.

Let me say it again in different words. The idea of the Constitution is to protect regular Americans from government tyranny more than any single other element. That's why the Founders gave Americans the right to bear Arms—just in case the government gets off kilter and stops deferring to the people.

The right to bear arms has nothing to do with hunting. The idea is that if our government ever becomes tyrannical, and this curse cannot be solved by elections, the people have the right, in the Constitution, to disband the current regime by the force of arms. The next right is to quickly form a new government of the people. In our 200 + years, thankfully, we have not needed to do this. Yet, it is our constitutional right.

While the Founders were trying to convince the public, one state at a time, to accept the precepts of the Constitution, as discussed previously, Alexander Hamilton, James Madison, and John Jay put their rationale to paper. In this way, the public would understand

how important freedom is and how the Constitution was built to help assure freedom and liberty for as long as the people pay attention.

Subsequent generations must also subscribe to the notion of the Constitution as the Supreme Law of the Land in order for freedom and liberty to last. And, we too must pay attention.

The notion of democracy and a free republic does not come easy. The press (media) is supposed to keep the country on its best behavior but in recent times our press has become corrupt and they lie to protect the favored political factions in America.

The socialist progressives lie and the corrupt mainstream press swears to it. And, thus, we must all think for ourselves and not depend on the lies of the media for our information.

The press in the US is respectfully called the mainstream media. Unfortunately, decades ago, yet still in my lifetime, they gave up on honesty. Now, they are part of the problem, not the solution. The mainstream media is in bed with the economic and political powers, which they are supposed to watch for the people.

They are charged in the Constitution to keep a vigilant eye on the political process. The Founders had no idea that the press could be bought by rich operatives with liberal progressive Marxist leanings. It is time to wake up America!

Unfortunately, gullible Americans recently have become cheerleaders for the socialist progressive cause. Thus, they no longer insist that the US Press is honest. Instead, they enjoy the corrupt coverage of their politicians because they have been convinced that it helps them in material ways.

It wasn't supposed to be like this and it must change. Understanding the Constitution through the Federalist Papers is a great way to understand the fundamentals of liberty and freedom, and the need for an honest press.

If it were not for the bloggers who mostly tell the truth today, along with Talk Radio, and parts of some news outlets, Americans might

conclude that we would be better served by inviting Mr. Putin to come on down and just take US over.

At least he has the underpinnings of a strong and courageous man, though none of his personal underpinnings are those about which our country was founded. If we must be controlled by a King, Putin would more than likely make a better King than our current executive.

Because of our Constitution, Americans should not ever need the likes of Vladimir Putin or Joseph Stalin to become our dictator or King. That is anathema to the freedoms for which many of our ancestors have fought and died.

We also should not have to worry about our leaders choosing to run our country in the same fashion as Vladimir Putin. Vladimir Lenin, or Joseph Stalin ran Communist Russia. It is against the most basic Law of the Land, The US Constitution.

Americans have the power through national elections at this moment in history, to simply throw out all tyrants and bring in people who are more sympathetic to America, the American people and American beliefs. Don't forget that the Constitution also permits US to impeach bad government officials—who we once elected in good faith.

I for one hope—that we do something very soon. This man's hope is for change. Big change! The socialist changes that we have been experiencing must be reversed. We risk becoming serfs to an oppressive government much sooner than later.

I hope this two-part introduction and the Federalist Papers, (Chapters 16 & 17), helps you and all American citizens to begin to understand our roles in keeping American strong. Without all of US; and that includes both you and I, corruption and lawlessness will win. When this happens, America and its children will lose.

I therefore beg you all to start your fight against tyranny by reading the Federalist Papers beginning today. Never let your guard down. Pay attention as if your life depends on it. It does!



**“America- if we cannot define Liberty, we cannot defend it. If we cannot define tyranny, we cannot defeat it. If you wish to be ignorant and free, you wish for what never was and never will be.” KrisAnne Hall**

**[www.conservativeactionalerts.com/author/krisanne-hall](http://www.conservativeactionalerts.com/author/krisanne-hall)**

## Summary of Founding Document Chapters

In the last part of this book we took a look, not only at the Constitution but also at the earlier original documents and declarations.

This brief walk through all these documents gives us a general perspective of how the government got to be as it is, and that's necessary as we discuss its structure in the civics lessons. It also helps as we look at things that are wrong with the government and ways that we can improve them as we read subsequent chapters.

As you read the Constitution in Appendix E, and I urge you to do this to be as informed as possible about the basic law of the land, make note that there is no article or section or clause that provides an upper limit to what government can take in taxes.

The idea of course was that taxation would be reasonable. The founders always expected Americans to reap what they would sow. Socialist progressives in our government today, however, have a different notion about that. This is not your father's America.

Putting politicians in control of the money supply in all three levels of government is certainly one of the weakest notions in the Constitution. Though the idea of nobility is expressly verboten by the Constitution, there is nothing that suggests that the representatives of the people could not behave nobly if they chose to do so. .

History proves that the Founding Fathers were very noble and so they expected that those who followed them to office would also be

noble. They may be honorable (See coming Chapter 31 for some humor on the hizzonnners), but few are noble.

We can blame taxation on the Constitution and the fact that it the document is just over 30 original pages for some of its shortcomings. Of course if all men were honest, 30 pages would be more than enough.

States also have constitutions and cities have charters, and all of these bodies can levy taxes and create more laws. So, it is no wonder, as this country has grown, the whole system has gotten unwieldy. Maybe we can start again but our primary reason to do so would be to rid the government of scoundrels and pilferers known as politicians.

Maybe we can simply vote them out of office. Surely this will be an option we examine as we explore how to deal with an unresponsive government after we cover civics in the next section.

## Part VI: Civics Lesson

### Chapter 20 The Study of Civics

#### What is Civics?

- ◆ It is the study of:
  - how public decisions are made,
  - issues that are important to the public, and
  - the rights and responsibilities of citizens

#### What is Civics?

In a book titled, *America 4 Dummies*, it is most appropriate to have a chapter or more that discusses the notion of Civics.

History buffs well know that Thomas Jefferson was a great believer in an educated population. He was not interested in a government of the dummies, for the dummies, and by the dummies.

In 1816, about forty years after the American Revolution, when the youngest of US were not even born (Irish humor), Jefferson wrote: "If a nation expects to be ignorant and free...it expects what never was and never will be." Jefferson saw education as the bedrock of democracy. Many scholars credit Thomas Jefferson as being our earliest and strongest champion of public education.

Yet, education about America; its appropriate founding; its structural integrity, assuring the minority a voice regardless of what the majority trumpets, its built-in notions so that crooks cannot readily become our leaders, and its reliance on rugged individualism, if not simple individualism, in order to assure freedom from a tyrannical government; are among the missing lessons for today's under fifty-crowd. They cannot help it if their generations are the

dummies that today we must write for. Though we can chalk some up to laziness, it is totally the fault of a too trusting public.

The public has some skin in the game as it finds US losing more liberties and more freedoms every day. John Q. trusts government too much. Consequently, regular people, who lack the fundamental knowledge of America can and have been manipulated to serve our socialist progressive Marxist government's end game, which is not for the benefit of the people.

Government over the years since Jefferson has become its own entity requiring constant feeding from a too-adoring public.

Nobody can replace the civics stuff that Americans missed in the classroom by having an education system dominated by unions rather than educators and wise people. The less the people know, the more likely those who think they know it all will exploit US and they will hurt US even long after we wake up to Cry Uncle!

Considering the US spends twice per capita on education than any other country, why do we create so many dummies? What can the ideological left's answer be to solve the educational ills of our country. Should we collect more taxes and spend more money on the same unions and teachers?

How do they explain away the lack of knowledge on the part of citizens to the foundational precepts of our nation? They simply do not explain and instead pretend that it has always been this way. In fact, the left is accomplishing its objectives of dumming down Americans quite handily. Many Americans are too brainwashed to complain.

Their goal is to be able to keep the direction of the dumming down—down. The Common Core at the Federal level is another power grab to prepare Americans for the coming of socialism with control of education by the central government. When the federal government makes the tests, and provides the cash to the school districts, the teachers will be using national, not state or local education plans to meet the Fed targets. Expect even dummmmer graduates as the worst thing for a communist state is an informed public. The truth is the greatest enemy of the state.

The tests and the curriculum to follow are put together by leftists and it is intended to slip in more Blame America First propaganda. I regret that the truth about America, as would be discussed in a real civics course will be kept from Americans by an ideology that hates America first! Indoctrination of our youth by the Federal Department of Education with the Common Core as its tool will make it worse.

Consider the twelve year old who came home from school in March 2014, and called a radio talk show because he was angry at the day's lesson. He had just learned that Christopher Columbus was an evil, money-hungry, greedy, Native American-killing person. He never considered that his teacher might be lying or did not know the facts herself.

So, he was mad at Columbus until his parents took him to a PC and spent an hour of research showing the young man that Columbus was a hero.

In 2010, Sandy Hingston got it 100% right when writing for Philadelphia Magazine. She noted that:

*“Children today seem, well, 'dumber' than they used to. They don't know the most basic stuff: who fought against whom in World War II, how many pints are in a quart, and in Jake's case, the days of the week. (He's shaky on the months, too.) They may be taking every AP and Honors course their schools offer, but they can't tell you who invented pasteurization.”*

Like many of their parents, children are even less tuned in to what their own country is about. They are beyond the notion of dummmmer regarding the country, as are most of their younger parents. Until recently, most did not care. They are simply dummm, and the ideological socialist progressive left likes it that way because the dummmmer the American, the easier they will be to control when left coast nirvana is reached and they are dependent on the government for all their needs.

The US Department of Education, which is so far left, parts of it lie in the deep Pacific Ocean (left coast), at the national level has been trying to overtake state's rights on education. Washington

bureaucrats think they know it all. Their objective is to degrade the founders as slave traders and elitists who cared nothing about the people. In this way, they can be assured that those of you, who have registered as American dummies, will sign away your lives and become dependent on them, instead of yourselves.

The founding documents have placed huge chains on the Marxists, socialist progressives, and communists and they know they are there. They do not like it one bit. This is the best reason for you to want to be very familiar with these documents.

Why do they hate our fundamental laws and the words of the founders so much? Because they stop them from taking over this country and turning it into a Banana Republic, with them in control. Many of these anti-Americans are in our Congress today but they will not tell you their true ideology. They lie instead. You have to hear them speak to know who they really are.

They hate the constraints provided by America's founders, especially those in the Constitution, and so they want US all to give up our freedoms willingly by the force of lies and other propaganda. They want US to give them the right to tear down all of our Constitutional protections including right to life, liberty, freedom, and the pursuit of happiness. Our rights only matter to US.

Then what? They think we are dummy enough to do what they want because their spiel is so good. That is why so subtly they have taken civics out of our schools. They do not want Americans to love America. It gets in their way and it may stop them from taking over the country completely in the coming years.

For years, these same people have been trying to take over America in so many other different ways. Their newest and greatest weapon is the "lie." Gullible Americans, who are now known as low-information voters, buy into their lies and never question their words. They sop it all up and believe every word as if it is the truth. But, it is not the truth.

Once they get regular Americans to trust them, it is their best weapon and it works well for them. They quickly learn that they have no problem getting people who pay little attention to

governmental affairs to believe their lies. They are so good at lying; their noses do not grow.

The lies grow, however, and the next thing, as in all other countries where this has been attempted, the people suffer. There is no big wave of egalitarianism. Instead, there is a takeover of the government by those who hate the common people and who detest the poor rabble that have a tough time getting by. In most countries, where this occurs, many people are killed simply for their possessions. Quite frankly, that is why many Americans will not give up their guns.

Unbelievably, the corrupt politicians in this country have the chutzpah and the charm to make the people, even the lowliest, whose only asset is their ability to breathe, to follow them right to their own deaths.

It hasn't happened just yet but more signs are readable every day. Such leaders do not love America or Americans. They want to overthrow US and take over and control US. The more we know about our foundational laws, the less likely we will ever permit them to have their way at our expense.

And, so they see the only solution to the chains the founding documents have placed upon them; is to discredit the founding of America and the founders. They try to tell US all that the founders are old fogies--believers in the Republic and freedom—and they are fools. They try to tell us that the neo-communists are the good guys because they like sex and porn, and dirty lyric music, and so they are like US and we are like them.

Is that really so?

Would we have been better served as pawns of King George III than to be Americans?

Why not give it up to an ideology that will help us understand the meaning of the word subjugation. Why not do it tomorrow? Why wait if lack of freedom and lack of liberty, and no option for a pursuit of happiness is such a splendid idea for an end to you and to America? If you believe that, they would argue, why not take the trip today?

Of course, I did not write this book for dummmies for anybody interested in staying dummm. I expect that any of those who read just a few pages will pick up something good that will inspire them to move towards an even better understanding of America and a better, more purposeful life. Hopefully, you will get mad as hell, and you won't take it anymore.

Additionally, my goal is to have Americans, such as you, reading this book because you choose to do so—to learn more about why it is such a great deal being an American—regardless of what lies you might hear someplace else. Yes, with Truth Justice & the American Way it would be great for America to have a super hero such as Superman help us in our quest for the best country possible.

So, on our way to more good stuff, let's drop off the map of excitement for a bit and start learning about things we must know to be good citizens. Being good citizens in America, of course starts with believing in America. Believing in America starts with understanding America. And, understanding America starts, as in all good courses, with a comprehensive yet brief (if that can be) definition of important terms. So, let's run through some definitions for the greater good.

In the important definitions that we put forth in this chapter and in others use some of the work of Aristotle, and a little work from Plato to help present positions about our government that are true and are believable, and are well founded in a history, documenting life long before the founders. Let's start with the definition of civics. It will take a while for US to begin defining other important terms in coming chapters.

## Civics in a nutshell

**Civics**, in a nutshell, is the study of the great practical and theoretical aspects of citizenship including its rights and duties, and the duties of citizens to each other as members of the body politic (the electorate, country) and to the government of the nation. There are many things that can be included in a civics lesson including the



study of laws and the study of the structure and function of government.

In civics, we pay close attention to the role of the citizen within the context of the country as opposed to the operation and oversight of government. Yet, for an American to be a good citizen, one must first understand how government functions. For the most part, that is the thrust of our civics lesson. That is the thrust of the book you are reading, which, of course is titled, *America 4 Dummies!*

Would you believe it if I told you that it was right after the Obama election in late November 2008, that Michelle Healy of USA TODAY, a rag paper not well known for conservative thought, was compelled to write an article titled: Americans don't know civics. Her rationale for writing the piece was that Americans were dummies in all matters civics. Here is how she begins her article. It made me stand back to "listen:"

*From high-school dropouts to college graduates to elected officials, Americans are "alarmingly uninformed" about the USA's history, founding principles and economy — knowledge needed to participate wisely in civic life, says a report scheduled to be released Thursday. The study, the third in a series by the non-profit Intercollegiate Studies Institute, finds that half of U.S. adults can name all three branches of government, and 54% know that the power to declare war belongs to Congress. Almost 40% incorrectly said that it belongs to the president.*

Healy also has done research about how Americans perceive civics. She noted that though 56% could name Paula Abdul as a judge on American Idol, only 21% knew that the phrase "government of the people, by the people, for the people" comes from Lincoln's Gettysburg Address. Lastly, and amazingly, just 54% were able to identify a basic description of the free enterprise system.

## **Check this for a proper grade for Americans:**

In the survey cited by Healy, a whopping 71% of those tested earned an F in civics. Are all Americans dummy on civics or are we simply underserved by those who are paid to teach US? The average score was 49%. The report notes that from ages 25 to 34, there was an

average score of 46%; ages 45 to 64 had a 52% average. The elected class—164 respondents—were deemed unworthy of holding office. They came in at a diminutive 44%. Is this a case of the dummm governing the less dummm?

We vote for these people. Yet, even elected officials know nothing about America. Those with degrees did a bit better but overall the verdict is that Americans have not been taught much about America in our public schools, colleges, or universities. It is too widespread for it not to be intentional.

It does not serve socialist progressive Marxists (US government leaders) to help the population understand that we actually have rights. Ask yourself if you have met anybody on the street recently who cares about any of this. Perhaps many people are afraid to talk about it in public. Is this America or has Rod Serling been fooling with some cosmic atoms.

John Taylor Gatto was the New York State Teacher of the year for 1989, 1990, and 1991. That is quite a record. He is very concerned for America. He was cited as the best there is in his profession. Since then, Gatto has written numerous books and given speeches about the *dumbing down of America*. Has he been part of the solution or part of the problem?

In his acceptance speech in 1991, he speculated that if instead of being hired to enlarge children's power, he may have been hired to diminish it. He noted that as he looked at his career objectively, he began to realize that

*“ the bells and confinement, the crazy sequences, the age-segregation, the lack of privacy, the constant surveillance, and all the rest of the national curriculum of schooling were designed exactly as if someone had set out to prevent children from learning how to think, and act, to coax them into addiction and dependent behavior.”*

Upon further examination he concluded that

*“... All of these lessons are prime training for permanent underclasses, people deprived forever of finding the center of their own special genius.”* He began to view the notion

of school as a *“twelve-year jail sentence, where bad habits are the only curriculum truly learned. I teach school, and win awards doing it. I should know.”*

Gatto is not the only one coming to such frightening conclusions.

Noted education expert, analyst and author, Samuel Blumenfeld sees the deliberate dummming down of American children by their education system as very well planned, and well executed. He writes:

*“Anyone who has had any lingering hope that what the educators have been doing is a result of error, accident, or stupidity will be shocked by the way American social engineers have systematically gone about destroying the intellect of millions of American children for the purpose of leading the American people into a socialist world government controlled by behavioral and social scientists.”*

The public and private education systems for American youth, as a topic, is way too large for any one book, especially one, such as this, designed to strengthen patriotism by retelling the facts about our great country. Yet a short look at the dummming down of America as we have covered above is necessary and appropriate because its cause is the same as the lack of understanding of civics in our culture today. It is why we have more people dumm about America today, than at any point in our history.

It is simply not politically correct to teach Americans that we have a right to anything, including life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness, and so the teaching textbooks and the teachers themselves simply do not do so. Teachers are dummmed down by the unions and leftist administrators, and the students consequently are dummed down by the teachers and the left-sided textbooks.

Besides not being able to learn we have rights, It is also not politically correct for Americans to believe they have rights. It is not politically correct to challenge the government, the unions, or teachers about how our children are not learning the needed lessons in schools.

Try arguing with a teacher about any subject today. Our only connection with teachers is that we pay twice more for what they do than they would make in any other country on earth.

Yet, despite not being told too often about them, we do have certain rights that are inalienable and others that we get from keeping the government from stealing them. Before the socialists in government today succeed in destroying the Constitution, a huge treasure chest of rights and freedoms are available for the American people.

But, the left does not like US to know that so please do not take your rights for granted. Pay attention and when you see their grubby little fingers trying to steal any of your rights, step on their fingers with pride.

The lack of knowledge of civics in America is a direct result of Americans no longer being taught to be patriotic by learning about the founding, our great Constitution, and what it takes to remain a free country. The socialists in tandem with the corrupt media, whose true role as the fourth estate is to fill in our knowledge gaps, have negatively impacted what Americans are permitted to learn.

Americans all over the country however, are slowly waking up to the negatives of government control and across this great land, we are fighting back.

There is some hope for the future if we can believe what we see. Former Supreme Court Justice Sandra Day O'Connor (92 years of age in 2022), a formidable proponent of our constitutional republic, has taken up the civics torch as the co-chair of the Campaign for the Civic Mission of Schools. O'Connor writes:

*"The better educated our citizens are, the better equipped they will be to preserve the system of government we have...And we have to start with the education of our nation's young people. Knowledge about our government is not handed down through the gene pool. Every generation has to learn it, and we have some work to do."*

Amen! Now, that is a refreshing thought!

At birth, Individuals do not automatically become responsible participating citizens. We must all be educated for citizenship. This determination to educate young Americans about their rights and responsibilities as citizens is known as the civic mission of schools.

Yet, we are doing very poorly as a nation in assuring that our population cannot be hoodwinked by the corrupt politicians du jour. One of the easiest ways to be sucked in by the chicanery of the unprincipled is to be unaware of one's rights.

Each state's constitution or library of public education establishment statutes and codes, acknowledges the civic mission of schools. It is there but it is being ignored today. Instead, the dummming down of Americans continues at a blistering pace.

You see; another movement in our country, the "Hate America First! Crowd" continues to make progress slowly yet deliberately towards a form of communistic government. Because of our lack of civic knowledge, the people are not just allowing it to happen but many are even clamoring for more of it.

Dependent Americans are becoming more dependent and they are demanding more welfare benefits. These have become an entitlement and a reward just for being a dummm American. But, those rewards are meager, and when anybody wants more, even if they think they are willing to work for it, there will be no opportunities.

In recent years, civic learning has been increasingly pushed aside. In some states it simply does not exist. The Federal Education Department is not interested in creating patriotic Americans and it discourages civics by omitting it in its plans.

I do not mean to suggest that the Feds are not hollowly suggesting civics is important for they feel right now since America is not fully socialist yet, they must. For example, in 2012, Arne Duncan, President Obama's Education Head offered these comments:

*"The need to revitalize and reimagine civic education is urgent. But that urgent need brings a great opportunity—the chance to improve civic education in ways that will resonate for years."*

Arne, with all due respect for your position, there is no civic education currently going on so how can it be improved? I suspect it can be improved in ways none of us would imagine.

Having watched the government's interpretation of improvement for many years, Duncan's words are empty and not very reassuring. Meanwhile the US Department of Education is doing its best to hurt America. Where's the beef?

Until the 1960s, three courses in Civics and Government were common in American high schools, and two of them ("Civics" and "Problems of Democracy") explored the role of citizens and encouraged students to discuss current issues. Today across all the states such courses are very rare and Duncan is not suggesting we bring them back.

As a socialist, the education chief does not really want the problem solved. What remains, after all these years, is just one course on "American Government" that usually spends little time on how people can – or why they should – participate as citizens. Is this intentional? Does Heinz have 57 varieties?

As of 2011, only 19 states include civic learning in their state assessment / accountability systems, generally as part of an overall social studies assessment, including history, geography, state history and economics. I would not expect it to improve until there is a fundamental change in the top echelons of our government.

# Chapter 21 Various Government Structures

## Civics definitions for dummies

In this book, in each chapter so far, we have discussed the importance of honest representative government. We have also lightly introduced the notion of taxation without representation as our elected leaders fail to accomplish their duties in representing the people.

In this civics lesson for dummies so far, we have discussed the problems we are experiencing today with an uneducated, and thus dummm population. Soon, we will examine our form of representative democracy and we will explore other forms and variations so we can all know that the US form of government is about as good as it can get. The founders were not dummies.

This continuation of our civics lesson into this chapter and beyond is presented as a substantive part of this book written for dummies. The objective is to leave this book with an understanding of the fundamental facts about America that makes our country so exceptional.

It is intended to give all Americans who are willing to learn, the opportunity to understand the basic tenets of the US representative constitutional democracy (aka constitutional republic). For a deeper appreciation of the notion of the US government and its underlying political principles, there is an excellent free course available on the Internet and I encourage you to visit the Cyberland University of North America at the following URL:

<http://www.proconservative.net/CUNAPolSci201HOutline.shtml>.

Dr. Almon Leroy Way, Jr. University President & Professor of Political Science in his free Internet course titled Political Science

201H - The American Political System: Politics & Government in the USA captures the details of politics and government in America. It is an excellent reference for just about any facet of American Government and Politics that you would like to examine. My hat is off to Dr. Way for a wonderful work and a thank you for sharing it for no charge with us all. Below, you will find the course description taken from the Web Site:

**COURSE DESCRIPTION:**

*A free, self-study, non-credit course in American Government and Politics designed to benefit (1) the general reader interested in politics, government, law, and public affairs, (2) the advanced high-school student enrolled in an American Government, Advanced Civics, Modern Problems, Problems of Democracy, or Political Science course, and (3) the university or college student enrolled in or planning to enroll in a Political Science or International Relations course or in a History, Geography, Sociology, Economics, or Business course with substantial political content.*

Another great source of free continuing education on the Constitution is a course titled Constitution 101: The Meaning and History of the Constitution, presented as a public service by Hillsdale College <https://online.hillsdale.edu/constitution101/info>

This not-for-credit online course follows closely the outline of the full-semester course required of all Hillsdale under-graduates as part of the College's Core Curriculum. Lectures and other Materials are archived to view at your convenience.

You may also read any online version of the Federalist Papers. In the founders words, The Federalist Papers tell us all why the Constitution is the greatest document for freedom and liberty ever written. This is another great learning opportunity. Of course, you can also purchase the hard copy of this book and other patriotic books by your author. Just visit [www.letsgopublish.com](http://www.letsgopublish.com).

## **Can Aristotle and Plato help US?**



They sure can! It would help to recall that even before the founders, many philosophers, had taken on the notion of government and what the best form of government might be. So, let's begin this with a quote from Aristotle, one of the greatest Ancient Greek Philosophers, who was also a logician, and a scientist:

*“The most perfect political community is one in which the middle class is in control, and outnumbers both of the other classes.”*

In all times before America, such as Ancient Greece, and in Europe during colonial times, the political and the social classes were much more obvious. They do not exist formally in America but surely, there is the notion of a class contrast with regard to those with wealth and those in poverty. These extremes are quite obvious.

Aristotle wanted to see as many people in the middle tier as possible so that there were few poor and they could move upward; and there were few rich and they could not overpower the people.

Let's go through this section beginning with a few definitions, which will help us learn the form and structure of our government from the time of our founding. Aristotle understood these notions well. He along with Plato spent many hours pondering the finest form of government.

**Constitution**—Aristotle uses the complex word, *Politeia*, in his writings and musings on government. It translates directly into the word, Constitution. To him, it also means constitutional government. Aristotle likes the notion of a Constitution or primal body of laws regardless of which form of government may be used. With a Constitution, it is less likely that the government would go awry. With a Constitution, Americans are less likely to ever see a time when a book titled “America Gone Wild” will be written about US!

He believes that constitutional governments are bound to govern with everyone's best interest in mind. Everybody knows the rules from the start, and this helps get the “game” right. He sees a government with a constitution as a compromise between the demands of both the rich and the poor.

**Kingship / Monarchy**—Aristotle loves the notion of an intelligent thoughtful King as the sole ruler. In this scenario, he sees the people benefitting from the king's beneficence and munificence. He sees such a king as an exceptional individual who governs with everyone's best interests in mind.

Aristotle, being the wise man that he is, admits that that finding such an outstanding leader is difficult, but he loves to believe that it may be a possibility, nonetheless. In Colonial times, if he were alive, Aristotle would have seen George Washington as a candidate to be the ideal king.

When the king rules for himself and not the people, Aristotle sees this as pure tyranny

**Aristocracy**—Just as he admires a kingship, Aristotle also has high regard for a government of aristocrats / elites. In this, he is not thinking of the hoity-toity, or the hoi polloi. Instead he sees aristocracy as "the rule of the best." Plato goes even further and refers to an aristocracy as "rule by the virtuous."

Aristotle recognizes that when an aristocracy goes bad it becomes an oligarchy. In an oligarchy, a few important people of not so virtuous character rule for the few and not for the good of all the people. He sees an aristocracy as superior to an oligarchy because it values everyone's interests.

**Oligarchy**—Aristotle uses oligarchy literally "the rule of the few," to refer to a government controlled by a few people who are always wealthy and looking to achieve more wealth. Aristotle sees oligarchy as a bad form of government. For example, big "C" Communism is a form of oligarchy.

**Aristocracy v oligarchy**—The term oligarchy always has a negative or derogatory connotation in both modern day and classical usage. Some see the US government today, formed as a constitutional republic, having denigrated into an oligarchy in which rich powerful ideologues control the people.

The worst attributes of an oligarchy are that as a ruling faction, it governs solely in its own interests, disregarding those of the poor. There is a deep contrast with the term aristocracy, which in contemporary times sometimes has a derogatory connotation (nobility), but never is it seen negative in classical times. In classical times, the most intelligent people with virtue as a guide work through governmental processes for the good of the people.

**Democracy**—Aristotle sees little value in a pure democracy, which means literally, "the rule of the people." With over 300 million citizens, it would be tough for all of US in this huge country to run the government. Aristotle's concern is that democracy is a type of government in which the poor masses have control and they choose to use it to serve their own selfish ends.

The poor are so many that they rule the day in a democracy, and so there is heavy taxation and exploitation of the rich, among other things, making the productive class if you will, less ambitious. Such governments do not last long.

Aristotle does not take issues with the idea of a government of the people, for the people, and by the people as is our great nation because he sees a major buffer to forms of majority rule such as democracy, in the use of a politeia, or constitution. Thus, a constitution makes a democracy OK in his eyes. It also subtly changes a democracy into a republic.

**Republic**-- a state in which supreme power is held by the people and their elected representatives, and which has an elected or nominated president rather than a monarch with a birth right. This sounds a lot like a democracy. However, a Republic always has a constitution or a basic set of laws which prevent the majority from oppressing the minority and keeping them from being part of the government.

In a republic, the minority has a voice. However, in a democracy, the majority can impose its will on the minority, and bring the minority to submission. In a republic (the US form of government), the majority cannot take away certain inalienable rights such as life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness.

Minorities cannot be rounded up for example, and put in prison because they do not agree with the political thinking of the regime.

Most philosophers see a well-functioning republic as the most ideal form of government. To repeat, the US is a constitutional representative democracy, which is by definition, a republic.

**Tyranny**—The rule of an individual interested solely in his own benefit. A perverse form of kingship and/or dictatorship, tyranny is unpopular and is usually overthrown. In Aristotle's opinion, it is the worst type of government. Tyranny can exist as an issue in all forms of government when leaders become too powerful. In such cases, throughout the history of man, the people eventually have enough and they revolt and form a new government.

Many Americans see today's president's unconstitutional use of executive orders and regulations as pure and simple tyranny. The president is operating without authority.

**Demagoguery**—As noted, Aristotle does not like the notion of a pure democracy in which the people held all the power and are constraint free. He sees this as mob rule. The worst type of democracy, in Aristotle's opinion, is when mob rule is carried to an extreme.

In demagoguery, everyone's voice is equal, and the rule of the majority has greater authority than the law. As a result, the apparent will of the people supersedes law. Invariably, a charismatic leader, or demagogue, takes control and becomes a tyrant. Because he speaks with the voice of the people, and because the voice of the people is sovereign, the demagogue is free to do what he wants.

Again many see this happening in America today and fear that our republic is on the verge of collapse.

## **Constitutional Democracy and Other Political Regimes—a bit more detail**

The United States of America has been formed as a "constitutional representative democracy." By definition, a constitutional representative democracy is a republic. Democracy can be defined as government by the people or by their elected representatives. Add a constitution, and some representation instead of direct control, and the flavor changes to a republic.

We have discussed the notion of a "direct democracy" or as it is sometimes called, a "pure democracy" in numerous chapters so far to assure that we understand it. It is a system in which all the people of a country or entity, who choose to participate, do so directly without elected or appointed representatives. It may, however include the use of stewards whose mission is to do as the people direct.

It might be a great way to get rid of crooked politicians using the principles of initiative, referendum, and recall, but as a total form of government, it is very inefficient. The people would need to give up their daily work to tend to governmental obligations in such a system.

When the people decide to have representatives instead of going it alone, the type of government is referred to as a representative democracy.

Attributes of a direct democracy are included in the notions of Initiative (opportunity to propose legislation), Referendum (opportunity to offer ballot resolutions in elections), and Recall (the ability to vote to have representatives come back home so that an honest person can be chosen.)

These important notions of a direct democracy are not included in the federal government of the United States at this time, but are included in twenty state constitutions. Parts of direct democracy, namely initiative, referendum, and recall, would help if properly done in concert with a representative, constitutional democracy.

The specific makeup of a direct democracy may take on different capabilities depending on the will of the people. Depending on how the system is structured, the members of this assembly might pass executive orders, create laws, elect and dismiss leaders and conduct trials.

When elected officials conduct the people's business in a direct democracy, they are considered executive agents, stewards, or direct representatives and thus are bound to the will of the people. It is not like electing the free thinkers we have today who listen more to the desires of the lobbyists than the represented.

Considering that many citizens of the US are upset with our leaders because of little accountability or so it seems, the notion of leaders being tied to the will of the people at first seems to have substantial merit.

With over 300,000,000 and counting as the population of the US, one can also see how it may be unwieldy for such a system to be fully direct in practice regardless of how attractive it is in theory.

Thus, for a direct democracy to work, intermediary public groups are needed. Theoretically, these groups can be the state legislators but, this too has issues in that the notion of "Honorable" and poor representation of the people's interests is also an ailment of state governments.

The vehicles that are used in a direct democracy - namely, Initiative, Referendum, and Recall all have merit and need to be included soon as amendments to our Constitution for our Federal Government.

When the representatives choose not to do the will of the people, a form of government that inhibits actions directly by the people gets in the way of being able to handle the situation. There is always the wonderful idea that when they are not doing their jobs, we can throw the bums out, and we should. But, today, we the people must hope our representatives will impeach the scoundrels for we may have to wait as much as six years to un-elect them.

With the entanglements that our elected find themselves with the ruling class, waiting two to six years to throw them out can be "taxing" and it makes the system less effective and less responsive than employing some direct democracy notions within our constitutional representative democracy between elections. Having direct democracy tools would also make politicians fear the people more than they do today..

You see, it is a constitutional representative democracy, aka a republic, that governs the US today. If representatives did not become corrupt over time in office, this form could be very effective.





# Chapter 22 Principles of a Constitutional Democracy

## Constitutional Democracy v Democracy

Now that we have defined the notion of a democracy, what then makes a constitutional democracy that much different than a “democracy?” A constitutional democracy can be described accurately as a system of government in which the power of government is defined and thus limited, and it is distributed in a body of fundamental written law called a constitution. In our constitutional representative democracy our body of laws is known as The Constitution.

Additionally, the electorate (that's US - the people -- a.k.a. the general voting populace within our political society) is given the effective means of controlling the elected representatives in the government. It also gives US the means to hold them accountable for their decisions and actions while in public office.

*Sidebar: Unfortunately, in today's America, the electorate is asleep and worse than that, are afraid to engage in political discussions for fear they may upset the foes of all forms of democracy.*

A constitutional democracy thus has two essential ingredients, (1) a constitutional ingredient and (2) a democratic ingredient. Let's examine these two ingredients:

The **constitutional** ingredient of a constitutional democracy is the "*constitutional government*." As noted above, this means that the founding fathers wrote a constitution so that the elected representatives of this nation could not just go ahead and do what they wanted with complete disregard to the most basic laws of this country—written in its Constitution. In other words, even a US president would be breaking the law if they took any law, such as Obamacare, and changed it to suit her or his needs.

The *democratic* ingredient of a constitutional democracy is *representative democracy* and, it has to do with who holds and thus has the right to exercise authority on behalf of the governed. It also describes how such authority is acquired and retained (elections, impeachments etc.). Additionally it prescribes that the representatives of the people are accountable to the people, and through elections, the people can change the face of the government by changing the face of its representatives. -- i.e. throwing the bums out...

A *constitution* as noted above is a very important document in that it provides the opportunity to protect liberty and freedom beyond the lives of the founders of the government. There is a specific process for constitutional amendments because they are such serious changes in government.

For the United States of America, its Constitution is the *supreme* law of land. Thus, it is of higher importance and takes precedence over all other laws of society. In fact, all other laws, to be valid and enforceable, must be written in accordance with the superior law of the Constitution.

## Separation of Powers for Honesty

Our Constitution requires a separation of powers, counting on the notion of countervailing power to keep all three separate branches (executive, legislative, and judicial) of government honest. Separation of powers is thus the structure of the government defined by the Constitution with specific powers to each branch, yet with none of the branches having supreme power.

The founders believed for example that the Congress would not let the President act in an unauthorized manner and vice versa. The court was there to solve conflicts within the branches, though it was not given supreme power.

The Legislators pass the laws and the president gets an opportunity to veto them or sign them into law. The President gets to hire a staff to enforce the laws. The president does not have the right to construct laws of his own. Only the Congress can pass laws. The

Supreme Court (nine members) cannot make laws and cannot enforce them. It can affirm them and it can strike them down if they are deemed unconstitutional..

Within the Congress, the House ,with 435 representatives elected by the people based on the population of the states, is the only branch of government permitted to allocate dollars towards funding the laws. Thus, the House is in control of the treasury, or the purse as some like to call it.

The Senate, comprised of 100 Senators, two each from each of the fifty states of the union, is where the voice of the minority is heard. Until recently, 60% of the Senators would have to approve many of the laws / appointments. This is thus not sole majority rule. It gives the minority a voice in the government, as so desired by the founders.

Legislators in the House are elected to two year terms; senators are elected by the people for six years; and the Supreme Court gets to function for a lifetime after being appointed by the President with the consent of the Senate. Notice the notion of countervailing power.

## **The Constitutional sniff test requires impartial nostrils**

Thus, in recent years, a number of cases, in which laws were passed about matters of great importance such as abortion, have been appealed to the Supreme Court of the U.S. This is right now deemed by practice, not by the founders as the court of last resort. This court determines whether laws pass the constitutional sniff test.

However, constitutional scholars believe that the Supreme Court has taken on more power than granted and it has begun to be a partisan to politics. The founders anticipated that the justices would be impartial and would be independent advocates for America. This subtle change, in which ideology has overtaken the freedom and liberty and the power of the people, is of grave concern to the continuance of our constitutional republic.

When the laws do not pass the sniff test or when the political makeup of the court sees things in a different light than the lawmakers, or prior justices, laws created either by the states or by the federal legislature may be affirmed or struck down.

When not upheld, they are no longer in force and thus they cannot be enforced. Many of US in the onlooker category think that the court should not take on more power than the Congress since the Congress is the direct voice of the people.

A proper resolution for the court would be to defer a law at least once, maybe several times, or until they get it right. In this way, the Congress gets to debate it again and vote on it again. This would solve a lot of problems and would dispel the notion that the Supreme Court is the most powerful branch of a government designed with three equal partners. .

Regarding enforcement of the laws, a great example comes from the case of April 16, 2007. The Supreme Court chose to uphold a law that banned a type of late-term abortion, a ruling that many believe portends enormous social, legal and political implications regarding this very divisive issue.

Considering that the nine members of the court itself were sharply divided (5-4) could prove historic. Political analysts suggested at the time that it sent a possible signal of the court's willingness, under Chief Justice John Roberts, to someday revisit the right to abortion which heretofore had been guaranteed in the 1973 Roe v. Wade case.

No branch of government is exempt from following the Constitution. In the U.S., every law enacted by a legislature and every decision or action of an executive office or agency must pass the constitutional test. Not all laws that may be unconstitutional by definition if well examined, however, are challenged in court. The Supreme Court does not go searching for cases. The cases come to the Court.

For a law to be reversed it must be appealed and it can be appealed as many times as needed until it may reach the Supreme Court of the United States. Appeals start at lower courts and progress if accepted by justices at various levels and to the Supreme Court.

If the governmental decision or law or action in question is found by the courts to be contrary to the Constitution, the court system will uphold the Constitution and set aside the unconstitutional verdict or action of the federal or state legislature or of the executive branches.

Unfortunately, many justices of the Supreme Court have decided in recent years to become pawns of government administrations (Clinton, Bush, Obama, etc.), rather than deciding cases for the benefit of the people. After all, these administrations bequeathed upon the appointed justice a wonderful lifelong position.

For example, nobody can ever expect that Justice Elena Kagan, the President's last appointee, will ever vote in a way that Barack Obama's minions have not directed her. Since this is a book of facts, and few opinions, feel free to check this Justice's record.

And so, with Justices of the Supreme Court professing their ideology rather than their adherence to the founding principles, one could logically deduce that the founders be damned if such ideologues could find enough other ideologues to undermine the country. The above is all fact. And so, we the people must pay attention to prevent this from happening.

Back in a historical time, American politicians could be considered honest and even honorable because honesty was at the time a virtue. Justices of the Supreme Court were beyond ideology and thus beyond reproach. At least theoretically, they represented the best interests of the people. Today, that unfortunately is not the case. For those learning about America for the first time, we can get back to those days if we choose, but it will not be easy.

My opinion is that we are at a point in history that the elite in America (not the good elite as in colonial times but the nose in the air, wealthy elite), ruled by those who are not as concerned about America as they are about their own ideologies, have figured out ways to undermine the general population which hitherto has been called "We the People."

They use tricks to attract the low information voter segment of "We the People," aka, dummies, to their side, and their tactics in appealing to such folks has delivered many elections to them. It is unethical and the founders, if consulted, would not approve.

Leftists in control of our government are so convinced that people want to stay dummm and continue in this faux love-fest that they are now moving their agendas into the front lines. Somehow they are convincing the dummmest of Americans that it was the people's idea in the first place. Not so! Do not give up so easily!

It is very important for all Americans to be smart and to refuse to be dummed down. When the sales pitch is continual, like the millions of advertising dollars spent on Obamacare, logic suggests it is not good for the people. All of the people know their own intelligence. If you do not respect your own intelligence, talk to your brother or sister or dad or mom or best friends, but don't let these swine suck you into something that hurts America.

For your edification, the text of the entire Constitution of these United States is proudly included in its entirety in many of Lets Go Publish's patriotic books including this book as well as Taxation Without Representation and The Federalist Papers by Hamilton, Jay, and Madison. You can always download the constitution for free by going to [www.letsGOPublish.com](http://www.letsGOPublish.com)

## **States Also Have Constitutions**

Leftists do not like the Constitution or the Bill of Rights. If the idea of a constitution were so bad, why would it be that each state in our United States of America, would have its own Constitution? The answer is obvious. It is not a bad idea. It is in fact a great idea! It is the only thing in our great republic that assures us all that our rights come before the rights of corrupt politicians.

Each state in the Union of States has its own constitution thus giving the 50 states (or 57 according to our current president) a notion of semi-autonomy meaning partial self-government. These 50 or 57 states comprise the federal union. Why the President thinks there are 57 states is ample proof to me that we have been doing a bad job in America teaching civics for an awful lot of years. Then again, it is possible the President received his civics education in another land mass.

The US Constitution guides the operation of the national government, and establishes its formal power relationships between the three branches of the national government as well as among the 50 semiautonomous states as well as the formal power relationships among the other principal organs, or institutions, of the national government. None of US would want this left to folklore or to memory alone as it is far too important. Thus it is written—and yes, it is law!

The U.S. Constitution is in fact, a single document consisting of the seven original articles drafted by the Federal Constitutional Convention of 1787, which were eventually ratified by the 13 original colonies (states), plus there are 27 amendments that have been added to the document during the 200+ years that have elapsed since original ratification and adoption of the Constitution.





# Chapter 23 The Bill of Rights and More



## The First Ten Constitutional Amendments

The Bill of Rights is what most people think about when we think about the Constitution. In the Bill of Rights, though already covered within the Constitution are noted such fundamental principles as freedom of the press, freedom of speech, freedom of religion and other wonderful freedoms that no people on any planet or continent or country had ever enjoyed until the founders helped Christen America.

When the Constitution was ratified on March 4, 1789, it was because several states that held out would not go along until they knew a bill of rights was coming. Many were concerned that they had given up rights that were included in the Articles of Confederation. So, the Congress put together twelve amendments. Ten of them passed and on December 15, 1791, the Bill of Rights (two amendments did not make it) was ratified, making these first ten changes part of the US Constitution.

So, now we say that the first ten constitutional amendments are known collectively as The Bill of Rights. They amplify freedoms for Americans that are included in the Constitution itself yet, the way the left tramples on these lifelines to freedom; one would think they were optional

They are not optional. Any amendment becomes part of the overall law of the land, irrevocable by Congress, the President, or the Supreme Court. It is tough to overturn something as unconstitutional when it actually is the Constitution.

Despite all the work in assuring freedom for all people, many today choose not to understand their hard earned constitutional freedoms. This permits the knaves in the government, and their backers—the socialist progressive Marxists, enabled by apparent indifference, to handily be taking our rights away.

The Bill of Rights may be key, but the Constitution is the lock that prevents government from ruling the people.

The US constitutional system consists of the power relationships among the principal branches of government resulting from the constitutional division and distribution of political authority among them by the Constitution itself.

It defines the roles in the governing process played by each of the principal governmental institutions defined within the Constitution. Americans must understand this in order to protect their personal freedoms. I hope that is why you chose to read *America 4 Dummies!* It is easy to be swayed when your source of news is the popular media. Be careful!

This notion is very important for Americans in that the Constitution provides the following attributes of government on our behalf:

- Divides and distributes the authority of government between the central government over the whole nation and the governments of the member-states of the federal union
- Assigns certain governmental powers to the states, while denying them certain other powers
- Assigns certain powers to the national government and expressly prohibits it from exercising **any powers not explicitly granted**. ----- In other words, the Federal government cannot by law decide that you cannot use anything. For example, they have unlawfully decreed you cannot use incandescent light bulbs as those invented by Thomas Edison. When the government is permitted to do

things like this that violate personal freedom, it is operating outside of its constitutional authority. Since Congress has permitted this and similar erosions of the people's power, some of US, and more very day, suggest we call all of our congressional representatives home and replace them with a set of people who are not afraid to represent the real interests of the people.

- Assigns the powers delegated to the national government to the principal entities of that government (The U.S. House of Representatives, the U.S. Senate, the President of the U.S.A., and the U.S. Courts system, with supreme judicial power reserved for the Supreme Court). Each entity has its own power, a strong incentive, and a legal right to oppose, block, check, and restrain the other entities of government when they get off track.
- Prescribes certain limitations on both the central government and the states by guaranteeing *civil liberties*, i.e., the basic rights and liberties of the individual citizen.

Facets of the constitutionality of the government may be overridden in fact if not in deed. The President has chosen to ignore Congress and not to follow the Constitution. The Congress, choosing to be an inept body in 2014, has enabled the President's power grab though it is unconstitutional.

Power abuse will continue until the people (US) vote out all members of the assembly who are in line with the ideology of a lawless president. The US government must comply with two fundamental legal requirements to remain legitimate

- The government must operate in accordance with the provisions of the Constitution
- The government must not exceed the authority granted to it by the Constitution.

The bottom line unfortunately for all Americans is that our government is no longer legitimate since it complies with neither of these requirements.

As much as we may personally like our representatives, we do not want them taking more power than we are willing to give them. When you read the Constitution, it is clear how insightful

the founding fathers were as they built the essential features of constitutionalism into the framework of the US government. The government's compliance with these two basic legal requirements is essential to its legitimacy.

So if we were to summarize the central purpose of constitutionalism, it would begin by sounding like this.

*It is to protect ourselves from our too-far-reaching neighbors who become politicians to promote their own welfare.*

The notion of limiting governmental power as dictated in the Constitution checks and restrains the persons who hold public office and who exercise political authority.

Thus, it is up to US as a wary and watchful society that our otherwise wonderful government does not get out of control. Hopefully, this book will help us all in this regard. America is not supposed to be a place for dummies. It is a place where all people are given the opportunity to be the best and the brightest.





## Part VII: Appendices – Founding Documents

### Appendix A: The Declaration of Rights and Grievances

At the First Continental Congress, the delegates drafted several documents, and several drafts of documents, one of which was the Declaration of Rights and Grievances. This was a statement of American complaints. It was sent to King George III, to whom, at the time, many of the delegates remained loyal. It was not sent to Parliament since the delegates did not have the same level of loyalty to this body. Quite frankly, The document implored King George III to step in and rescue the colonies from the English Parliament.

The radical delegates were critical of this particular *Declaration* because it continued to concede the right of Parliament to regulate colonial trade, a view that was losing favor in the mid-1770s. Many suggest that the actual cause of the American Revolution is found in this major historical document.

Thus, In the First Continental Congress, which met in September and October 1774, the delegates of the Congress made several major decisions. Among those was to send King George III this Declaration of Rights and Grievances, which is shown below: .

---

#### *In Congress, at Philadelphia, October 14, 1774*

*Whereas, since the close of the last war, the British Parliament, claiming a power of right to bind the people of America, by statute, all cases whatsoever, hath in some acts expressly imposed taxes on them and in others, under various pretenses, but in fact for the purpose raising a revenue, hath imposed rates and duties payable in these colonies established a board of commissioners, with unconstitutional powers, and extended the jurisdiction of courts of admiralty, not only for collecting the said duties, but for the trial of causes merely arising within the body of a county.*

*And whereas, in consequence of other statutes, judges, who before held only estates at will in their offices, have been made dependent on the Crown alone for their salaries, and standing armies kept in time of peace:*

*And whereas, it has lately been resolved in Parliament, that by force of a statute, made in the thirty-fifth year of the reign of Henry the Eighth, colonists may be transported to England, and tried there upon accusations for treasons, and misprisions, or concealments of treasons committed in the colonies, and by a late statute, such trials have been directed in cases therein mentioned.*

*And whereas, in the last session of Parliament, three statutes were made; one, entitled "An act to discontinue, in such manner and for such time as are therein mentioned, the landing and discharging, lading, or shipping of goods, wares and merchandise, at the town, and within the harbor of Boston, in the province of Massachusetts Bay, in North America"; and another, entitled "An act for the better regulating the government of the*

*province of the Massachusetts Bay in New England"; and another, entitled "An act for the impartial administration of justice, in the cases of persons questioned for any act done by them in the execution of the law, or for the suppression of riots and tumults in the province of the Massachusetts Bay, in New England." And another statute was then made, "for making more effectual provision for the government of the province of Quebec, etc." All which statutes are impolitic, unjust and cruel, as well as unconstitutional, and most dangerous and destructive of American rights.*

*And whereas, assemblies have been frequently dissolved, contrary to the rights of the people, when they attempted to deliberate on grievances; and their dutiful, humble, loyal, and reasonable petitions to the Crown for redress, have been repeatedly treated with contempt by His Majesty's ministers of state:*

*The good people of the several colonies of New Hampshire, Massachusetts Bay, Rhode Island and Providence Plantations, Connecticut, New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, New Castle, Kent and Sussex on Delaware, Maryland, Virginia, North Carolina, and South Carolina, justly alarmed at these arbitrary proceedings of Parliament and administration, have severally elected, constituted, and appointed deputies to meet and sit in general congress, in the city of Philadelphia, in order to obtain such establishment, as that their religion, laws, and liberties may not be subverted.*

*Whereupon the deputies so appointed being now assembled, in a full and free representation of these colonies, taking into their most serious consideration, the best means of attaining the ends aforesaid, do, in the first place, as Englishmen, their ancestors in like cases have usually done, for asserting and vindicating their rights and liberties, declare,*

*That the inhabitants of the English colonies in North America, by the immutable laws of nature, the principles of the English Constitution, and the several charters or compacts, have the following rights:*

- 1. That they are entitled to life, liberty, and property, and they have never ceded to any sovereign power whatever, a right to dispose of either without their consent.*
- 2. That our ancestors, who first settled these colonies, were at the time of their emigration from the mother country, entitled to all the rights, liberties, and immunities of free and natural-born subjects, within the realm of England.*
- 3. That by such emigration they by no means forfeited, surrendered, or lost any of those rights, but that they were, and their descendants now are, entitled to the exercise and enjoyment of all such of them, as their local and other circumstances enable them, to exercise and enjoy.*
- 4. That the foundation of English liberty, and of all free government, is a right in the people to participate in their legislative council: and as the English colonists are not represented, and from their local and other circumstances, cannot properly be represented in the British Parliament, they are entitled to a free and exclusive power of legislation in their several provincial legislatures, where their right of representation can alone be preserved, in all cases of taxation and internal polity, subject only to the negative of their sovereign, in such manner as has been heretofore used and accustomed. But, from the necessity of the case, and a regard to the mutual interest of both countries, we cheerfully consent to the operation of such acts of the British Parliament, as are bona fide, restrained to the regulation of our external commerce, for the purpose of securing the commercial advantages of the whole empire to the mother country, and the commercial benefits of its respective members; excluding every idea of*



*taxation, internal or external, for raising a revenue on the subjects in America, without their consent.*

5. *That the respective colonies are entitled to the common law of England, and more especially to the great and inestimable privilege of being tried by their peers of the vicinage, according to the course of that law.*
6. *That they are entitled to the benefit of such of the English statutes as existed at the time of their colonization; and which they have, by experience, respectively found to be applicable to their several local and other circumstances.*
7. *That these, His Majesty's colonies, are likewise entitled to all the immunities and privileges granted and confirmed to them by royal charters, or secured by their several codes of provincial laws.*
8. *That they have a right peaceably to assemble, consider of their grievances, and petition the King; and that all prosecutions, prohibitory proclamations, and commitment for the same, are illegal.*
9. *That the keeping a standing army in these colonies, in times of peace, without the consent of the legislature of that colony, in which such army is kept, is against law.*
10. *It is indispensably necessary to good government, and rendered essential by the English constitution, that the constituent branches of the legislature be independent of each other; that, therefore, the exercise of legislative power in several colonies, by a council appointed, during pleasure by the Crown, is unconstitutional, dangerous, and destructive to the freedom of American legislation.*

*All and each of which the aforesaid deputies, in behalf of themselves and their constituents, do claim, demand, and insist on, as their indubitable rights and liberties; which cannot be legally taken from them, altered or abridged by any power whatever, without their own consent, by their representatives in their several provincial legislatures.*

*In the course of our inquiry, we find many infringements and violations of the foregoing rights, which, from an ardent desire, that harmony and mutual intercourse of affection and interest may be restored, we pass over for the present, and proceed to state such acts and measures as have been adopted since the last war, which demonstrate a system formed to enslave America.*

*Resolved, N. C. D. That the following acts of Parliament are infringements and violations of the rights of the colonists; and that the repeal of them is essentially necessary in order to restore harmony between Great Britain and the American colonies, viz;*

*The several acts of 4 Geo. 3. ch. 15, and ch. 34.--5 Geo. 3. ch. 25.--6 Geo. 3. ch. 52.--7 Geo. 3. ch. 41, and ch. 46.--8 Geo. 3. ch. 22, which impose duties for the purpose of raising a revenue in America, extend the powers of the admiralty court beyond their ancient limits, deprive the American subject of trial by jury, authorize the judges' certificate to indemnify the prosecutor from damages, that he might otherwise be liable to, requiring oppressive security from a claimant of ships and goods seized, before he shall be allowed to defend his property, and are subversive of American rights.*

*Also the 12 Geo. 3. ch. 24, entitled "An act for the better securing His Majesty's dock yards, magazines, ships, ammunition, and stores," which declares a new offense in America, and deprives the American subject of a constitutional trial by jury of the vicinage, by authorizing the trial of any person, charged with the committing any offense described in the said act, out of the realm, to be indicted and tried for the same in any shire or county within the realm.*

*Also the three acts passed in the last session of Parliament, for stopping the port and blocking up the harbor of Boston, for altering the charter and government of the Massachusetts Bay, and that which is entitled "An act for the better administration of justice," etc.*

*Also the act passed in the same session for establishing the Roman Catholic religion in the province of Quebec, abolishing the equitable system of English laws, and erecting a tyranny there, to the great danger, from so total a dissimilarity of religion, law, and government of the neighboring British colonies, by the assistance of whose blood and treasure the said country was conquered from France.*

*Also the act passed in the same session for the better providing suitable quarters for officers and soldiers in His Majesty's service in North America  
Also, that the keeping a standing army in several of these colonies, in time of peace, without the consent of the legislature of that colony in which such army is kept, is against law.*

*To these grievous acts and measures, Americans cannot submit, but in hopes that their fellow subjects in Great Britain will, on a revision of them, restore us to that state in which both countries found happiness and prosperity, we have for the present only resolved to pursue the following peaceable measures:*

*1st. To enter into a non-importation, non-consumption, and non exportation agreement or association.*

*2. To prepare an address to the people of Great Britain, and a memorial to the inhabitants of British America, and*

*3. To prepare a loyal address to His Majesty; agreeable to resolutions already entered into.*

# Appendix B The Articles of Association

---

## The Articles of Association October 20, 1774

*We, his majesty's most loyal subjects, the delegates of the several colonies of New-Hampshire, Massachusetts-Bay, Rhode-Island, Connecticut, New-York, New-Jersey, Pennsylvania, the three lower counties of Newcastle, Kent and Sussex on Delaware, Maryland, Virginia, North-Carolina, and South-Carolina, deputed to represent them in a continental Congress, held in the city of Philadelphia, on the 5th day of September, 1774, avowing our allegiance to his majesty, our affection and regard for our fellow-subjects in Great-Britain and elsewhere, affected with the deepest anxiety, and most alarming apprehensions, at those grievances and distresses, with which his Majesty's American subjects are oppressed; and having taken under our most serious deliberation, the state of the whole continent, find, that the present unhappy situation of our affairs is occasioned by a ruinous system of colony administration, adopted by the British ministry about the year 1763, evidently calculated for enslaving these colonies, and, with them, the British Empire. In prosecution of which system, various acts of parliament have been passed, for raising a revenue in America, for depriving the American subjects, in many instances, of the constitutional trial by jury, exposing their lives to danger, by directing a new and illegal trial beyond the seas, for crimes alleged to have been committed in America: And in prosecution of the same system, several late, cruel, and oppressive acts have been passed, respecting the town of Boston and the Massachusetts-Bay, and also an act for extending the province of Quebec, so as to border on the western frontiers of these colonies, establishing an arbitrary government therein, and discouraging the settlement of British subjects in that wide extended country; thus, by the influence of civil principles and ancient prejudices, to dispose the inhabitants to act with hostility against the free Protestant colonies, whenever a wicked ministry shall choose so to direct them.*

*To obtain redress of these grievances, which threaten destruction to the lives liberty, and property of his majesty's subjects, in North-America, we are of opinion, that a non-importation, non-consumption, and non-exportation agreement, faithfully adhered to, will prove the most speedy, effectual, and peaceable measure: And, therefore, we do, for ourselves, and the inhabitants of the several colonies, whom we represent, firmly agree and associate, under the sacred ties of virtue, honour and love of our country, as follows:*

*1. That from and after the first day of December next, we will not import, into British America, from Great-Britain or Ireland, any goods, wares, or merchandise whatsoever, or from any other place, any such goods, wares, or merchandise, as shall have been exported from Great-Britain or Ireland; nor will we, after that day, import any East-India tea from any part of the world; nor any molasses, syrups, paneles, coffee, or pimento, from the British plantations or from Dominica; nor wines from Madeira, or the Western Islands; nor foreign indigo.*

*2. We will neither import nor purchase, any slave imported after the first day of December next; after which time, we will wholly discontinue the slave trade, and will neither be concerned in it ourselves, nor will we hire our vessels, nor sell our commodities or manufactures to those who are concerned in it.*

3. *As a non-consumption agreement, strictly adhered to, will be an effectual security for the observation of the non-importation, we, as above, solemnly agree and associate, that from this day, we will not purchase or use any tea, imported on account of the East-India company, or any on which a duty hath been or shall be paid; and from and after the first day of March next, we will not purchase or use any East-India tea whatever; nor will we, nor shall any person for or under us, purchase or use any of those goods, wares, or merchandise, we have agreed not to import, which we shall know, or have cause to suspect, were imported after the first day of December, except such as come under the rules and directions of the tenth article hereafter mentioned.*

4. *The earnest desire we have not to injure our fellow-subjects in Great-Britain, Ireland, or the West-Indies, induces us to suspend a non-exportation, until the tenth day of September, 1775; at which time, if the said acts and parts of acts of the British parliament herein after mentioned, are not repealed, we will not directly or indirectly, export any merchandise or commodity whatsoever to Great-Britain, Ireland, or the West-Indies, except rice to Europe.*

5. *Such as are merchants, and use the British and Irish trade, will give orders, as soon as possible, to their factors, agents and correspondents, in Great-Britain and Ireland, not to ship any goods to them, on any pretence whatsoever, as they cannot be received in America; and if any merchant, residing in Great-Britain or Ireland, shall directly or indirectly ship any goods, wares or merchandize, for America, in order to break the said non-importation agreement, or in any manner contravene the same, on such unworthy conduct being well attested, it ought to be made public; and, on the same being so done, we will not, from thenceforth, have any commercial connexion with such merchant.*

6. *That such as are owners of vessels will give positive orders to their captains, or masters, not to receive on board their vessels any goods prohibited by the said non-importation agreement, on pain of immediate dismissal from their service.*

7. *We will use our utmost endeavours to improve the breed of sheep, and increase their number to the greatest extent; and to that end, we will kill them as seldom as may be, especially those of the most profitable kind; nor will we export any to the West-Indies or elsewhere; and those of us, who are or may become overstocked with, or can conveniently spare any sheep, will dispose of them to our neighbours, especially to the poorer sort, on moderate terms.*

8. *We will, in our several stations, encourage frugality, economy, and industry, and promote agriculture, arts and the manufactures of this country, especially that of wool; and will discountenance and discourage every species of extravagance and dissipation, especially all horse-racing, and all kinds of games, cock fighting, exhibitions of shews, plays, and other expensive diversions and entertainments; and on the death of any relation or friend, none of us, or any of our families will go into any further mourning-dress, than a black crepe or ribbon on the arm or hat, for gentlemen, and a black ribbon and necklace for ladies, and we will discontinue the giving of gloves and scarves at funerals.*

9. *Such as are venders of goods or merchandize will not take advantage of the scarcity of goods, that may be occasioned by this association, but will sell the same at the rates we have been respectively accustomed to do, for twelve months last past. -And if any vender of goods or merchandise shall sell such goods on higher terms, or shall, in any manner, or by any device whatsoever, violate or depart from this agreement, no person ought, nor will any of us deal with any such person, or his or her factor or agent, at any time thereafter, for any commodity whatever.*

10. *In case any merchant, trader, or other person, shall import any goods or merchandize, after the first day of December, and before the first day of February next, the same ought forthwith, at the election of the owner, to be either re-shipped or delivered up to the committee of the country or town, wherein they shall be imported, to be stored at the risque of the importer, until the non-importation agreement shall cease, or be sold under the direction of the committee aforesaid; and in the last-mentioned case, the owner or owners of such goods shall be reimbursed out of the sales, the first cost and charges, the profit, if any, to be applied towards relieving and employing such poor inhabitants of the town of Boston, as are immediate sufferers by the Boston port-bill; and a particular account of all goods so returned, stored, or sold, to be inserted in the public papers; and if any goods or merchandizes shall be imported after the said first day of February, the same ought forthwith to be sent back again, without breaking any of the packages thereof.*

11. *That a committee be chosen in every county, city, and town, by those who are qualified to vote for representatives in the legislature, whose business it shall be attentively to observe the conduct of all persons touching this association; and when it shall be made to appear, to the satisfaction of a majority of any such committee, that any person within the limits of their appointment has violated this association, that such majority do forthwith cause the truth of the case to be published in the gazette; to the end, that all such foes to the rights of British-America may be publicly known, and universally contemned as the enemies of American liberty; and thenceforth we respectively will break off all dealings with him or her.*

12. *That the committee of correspondence, in the respective colonies, do frequently inspect the entries of their customhouses, and inform each other, from time to time, of the true state thereof, and of every other material circumstance that may occur relative to this association.*

13. *That all manufactures of this country be sold at reasonable prices, so- that no undue advantage be taken of a future scarcity of goods.*

14. *And we do further agree and resolve that we will have no trade, commerce, dealings or intercourse whatsoever, with any colony or province, in North-America, which shall not accede to, or which shall hereafter violate this association, but will hold them as unworthy of the rights of freemen, and as inimical to the liberties of their country.*

*And we do solemnly bind ourselves and our constituents, under the ties aforesaid, to adhere to this association, until such parts of the several acts of parliament passed since the close of the last war, as impose or continue duties on tea, wine, molasses, syrups paneles, coffee, sugar, pimento, indigo, foreign paper, glass, and painters' colours, imported into America, and extend the powers of the admiralty courts beyond their ancient limits, deprive the American subject of trial by jury, authorize the judge's certificate to indemnify the prosecutor from damages, that he might otherwise be liable to from a trial by his peers, require oppressive security from a claimant of ships or goods seized, before he shall be allowed to defend his property, are repealed. -And until that part of the act of the 12 G. 3. ch. 24, entitled "An act for the better securing his majesty's dock-yards magazines, ships, ammunition, and stores," by which any persons charged with committing any of the offenses therein described, in America, may be tried in any shire or county within the realm, is repealed-and until the four acts, passed the last session of parliament, viz. that for stopping the port and blocking up the harbour of Boston-that for altering the charter and government of the Massachusetts-Bay-and that which is entitled "An act for the better administration of justice, &c."-and that "for extending the limits of Quebec, &c." are repealed. And we recommend it to the provincial conventions, and to the committees in the respective colonies, to establish such farther regulations as they may think proper, for carrying into execution this association.*

*The foregoing association being determined upon by the Congress, was ordered to be subscribed by the several members thereof; and thereupon, we have hereunto set our respective names accordingly.*

*IN CONGRESS, PHILADELPHIA, October 20, 1774.  
PEYTON RANDOLPH, President.*

**New Hampshire**

John Sullivan, Nathaniel Folsom

**Massachusetts Bay**

Thomas Cushing, Samuel Adams, John Adams, Robert Treat Paine

**Rhode Island**

Stephen Hopkins, Samuel Ward

**Connecticut**

Eliphalet Dyer, Roger Sherman, Silas Deane

**New York**

Isaac Low, John Alsop, John Jay, James Duane, Philip Livingston, William Floyd, Henry Wisner, Simon. Boerum

**New Jersey**

James. Kinsey, William. Livingston, Stephen Crane, Richard. Smith,  
John De Hart

**Pennsylvania**

Joseph Galloway, John Dickinson, Charles Humphreys, Thomas Mifflin, Edward Biddle, John Morton, George Ross

**The Lower Counties New Castle**

Cæsar Rodney, Thomas. M: Kean, George Read

**Maryland**

Matthew Tilghman, Thomas Johnson Junior, William Paca, Samuel Chase

**Virginia**

Richard Henry Lee, George Washington, Patrick Henry, Junior, Richard Bland, Benjamin Harrison, Edmund Pendleton

**North-Carolina**

William Hooper, Joseph Hewes, Richard Caswell

**South-Carolina**

Henry Middleton, Thomas Lynch, Christopher Gadsden,  
John Rutledge, Edward Rutledge

# Appendix C The Declaration of Independence

---

IN CONGRESS, JULY 4, 1776

The Unanimous Declaration of the thirteen United States of America

When in the Course of human events it becomes necessary for one people to dissolve the political bands which have connected them with another and to assume among the powers of the earth, the separate and equal station to which the Laws of Nature and of Nature's God entitle them, a decent respect to the opinions of mankind requires that they should declare the causes which impel them to the separation.

We hold these truths to be self-evident, that all men are created equal, that they are endowed by their Creator with certain unalienable Rights, that among these are Life, Liberty and the pursuit of Happiness. — That to secure these rights, Governments are instituted among Men, deriving their just powers from the consent of the governed, — That whenever any Form of Government becomes destructive of these ends, it is the Right of the People to alter or to abolish it, and to institute new Government, laying its foundation on such principles and organizing its powers in such form, as to them shall seem most likely to effect their Safety and Happiness. Prudence, indeed, will dictate that Governments long established should not be changed for light and transient causes; and accordingly all experience hath shewn that mankind are more disposed to suffer, while evils are sufferable than to right themselves by abolishing the forms to which they are accustomed. But when a long train of abuses and usurpations, pursuing invariably the same Object evinces a design to reduce them under absolute Despotism, it is their right, it is their duty, to throw off such Government, and to provide new Guards for their future security. — Such has been the patient sufferance of these Colonies; and such is now the necessity which constrains them to alter their former Systems of Government. The history of the present King of Great Britain is a history of repeated injuries and usurpations, all having in direct object the establishment of an absolute Tyranny over these States. To prove this, let Facts be submitted to a candid world.

He has refused his Assent to Laws, the most wholesome and necessary for the public good.

He has forbidden his Governors to pass Laws of immediate and pressing importance, unless suspended in their operation till his Assent should be obtained; and when so suspended, he has utterly neglected to attend to them.

He has refused to pass other Laws for the accommodation of large districts of people, unless those people would relinquish the right of Representation in the Legislature, a right inestimable to them and formidable to tyrants only.

He has called together legislative bodies at places unusual, uncomfortable, and distant from the depository of their Public Records, for the sole purpose of fatiguing them into compliance with his measures.

He has dissolved Representative Houses repeatedly, for opposing with manly firmness his invasions on the rights of the people.

He has refused for a long time, after such dissolutions, to cause others to be elected, whereby the Legislative Powers, incapable of Annihilation, have returned to the People

at large for their exercise; the State remaining in the mean time exposed to all the dangers of invasion from without, and convulsions within.

He has endeavoured to prevent the population of these States; for that purpose obstructing the Laws for Naturalization of Foreigners; refusing to pass others to encourage their migrations hither, and raising the conditions of new Appropriations of Lands.

He has obstructed the Administration of Justice by refusing his Assent to Laws for establishing Judiciary Powers.

He has made Judges dependent on his Will alone for the tenure of their offices, and the amount and payment of their salaries.

He has erected a multitude of New Offices, and sent hither swarms of Officers to harass our people and eat out their substance.

He has kept among us, in times of peace, Standing Armies without the Consent of our legislatures.

He has affected to render the Military independent of and superior to the Civil Power.

He has combined with others to subject us to a jurisdiction foreign to our constitution, and unacknowledged by our laws; giving his Assent to their Acts of pretended Legislation:

For quartering large bodies of armed troops among us:

For protecting them, by a mock Trial from punishment for any Murders which they should commit on the Inhabitants of these States:

For cutting off our Trade with all parts of the world:

For imposing Taxes on us without our Consent:

For depriving us in many cases, of the benefit of Trial by Jury:

For transporting us beyond Seas to be tried for pretended offences:

For abolishing the free System of English Laws in a neighbouring Province, establishing therein an Arbitrary government, and enlarging its Boundaries so as to render it at once an example and fit instrument for introducing the same absolute rule into these Colonies

For taking away our Charters, abolishing our most valuable Laws and altering fundamentally the Forms of our Governments:

For suspending our own Legislatures, and declaring themselves invested with power to legislate for us in all cases whatsoever.

He has abdicated Government here, by declaring us out of his Protection and waging War against us.

He has plundered our seas, ravaged our coasts, burnt our towns, and destroyed the lives of our people.



He is at this time transporting large Armies of foreign Mercenaries to compleat the works of death, desolation, and tyranny, already begun with circumstances of Cruelty & Perfidy scarcely paralleled in the most barbarous ages, and totally unworthy the Head of a civilized nation.

He has constrained our fellow Citizens taken Captive on the high Seas to bear Arms against their Country, to become the executioners of their friends and Brethren, or to fall themselves by their Hands.

He has excited domestic insurrections amongst us, and has endeavoured to bring on the inhabitants of our frontiers, the merciless Indian Savages whose known rule of warfare, is an undistinguished destruction of all ages, sexes and conditions.

In every stage of these Oppressions We have Petitioned for Redress in the most humble terms: Our repeated Petitions have been answered only by repeated injury. A Prince, whose character is thus marked by every act which may define a Tyrant, is unfit to be the ruler of a free people.

Nor have We been wanting in attentions to our British brethren. We have warned them from time to time of attempts by their legislature to extend an unwarrantable jurisdiction over us. We have reminded them of the circumstances of our emigration and settlement here. We have appealed to their native justice and magnanimity, and we have conjured them by the ties of our common kindred to disavow these usurpations, which would inevitably interrupt our connections and correspondence. They too have been deaf to the voice of justice and of consanguinity. We must, therefore, acquiesce in the necessity, which denounces our Separation, and hold them, as we hold the rest of mankind, Enemies in War, in Peace Friends.

We, therefore, the Representatives of the united States of America, in General Congress, Assembled, appealing to the Supreme Judge of the world for the rectitude of our intentions, do, in the Name, and by Authority of the good People of these Colonies, solemnly publish and declare, That these united Colonies are, and of Right ought to be Free and Independent States, that they are Absolved from all Allegiance to the British Crown, and that all political connection between them and the State of Great Britain, is and ought to be totally dissolved; and that as Free and Independent States, they have full Power to levy War, conclude Peace, contract Alliances, establish Commerce, and to do all other Acts and Things which Independent States may of right do. — And for the support of this Declaration, with a firm reliance on the protection of Divine Providence, we mutually pledge to each other our Lives, our Fortunes, and our sacred Honor.

— John Hancock

New Hampshire:

Josiah Bartlett, William Whipple, Matthew Thornton

Massachusetts:

John Hancock, Samuel Adams, John Adams, Robert Treat Paine, Elbridge Gerry

Rhode Island:

Stephen Hopkins, William Ellery

Connecticut:

Roger Sherman, Samuel Huntington, William Williams, Oliver Wolcott

New York:

William Floyd, Philip Livingston, Francis Lewis, Lewis Morris

New Jersey:

Richard Stockton, John Witherspoon, Francis Hopkinson, John Hart, Abraham Clark

Pennsylvania:

Robert Morris, Benjamin Rush, Benjamin Franklin, John Morton, George Clymer, James Smith, George Taylor, James Wilson, George Ross

Delaware:

Caesar Rodney, George Read, Thomas McKean

Maryland:

Samuel Chase, William Paca, Thomas Stone, Charles Carroll of Carrollton

Virginia:

George Wythe, Richard Henry Lee, Thomas Jefferson, Benjamin Harrison, Thomas Nelson, Jr., Francis Lightfoot Lee, Carter Braxton

North Carolina:

William Hooper, Joseph Hewes, John Penn

South Carolina:

Edward Rutledge, Thomas Heyward, Jr., Thomas Lynch, Jr., Arthur Middleton

Georgia:

Button Gwinnett, Lyman Hall, George Walton

# Appendix D The Articles of Confederation

---

The Articles of Confederation Agreed to by Congress November 15, 1777; ratified and in force, March 1, 1781.

## **Preamble:**

*To all to whom these Presents shall come, we the undersigned Delegates of the States affixed to our Names send greeting.*

*Articles of Confederation and perpetual Union between the States of New Hampshire, Massachusetts bay, Rhode Island and Providence Plantations, Connecticut, New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware, Maryland, Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina and Georgia.*

Article I. The Stile of this Confederacy shall be "The United States of America."

Article II. Each state retains its sovereignty, freedom, and independence, and every power, jurisdiction, and right, which is not by this Confederation expressly delegated to the United States, in Congress assembled.

Article III. The said States hereby severally enter into a firm league of friendship with each other, for their common defense, the security of their liberties, and their mutual and general welfare, binding themselves to assist each other, against all force offered to, or attacks made upon them, or any of them, on account of religion, sovereignty, trade, or any other pretense whatever.

Article IV. The better to secure and perpetuate mutual friendship and intercourse among the people of the different States in this Union, the free inhabitants of each of these States, paupers, vagabonds, and fugitives from justice excepted, shall be entitled to all privileges and immunities of free citizens in the several States; and the people of each State shall free ingress and regress to and from any other State, and shall enjoy therein all the privileges of trade and commerce, subject to the same duties, impositions, and restrictions as the inhabitants thereof respectively, provided that such restrictions shall not extend so far as to prevent the removal of property imported into any State, to any other State, of which the owner is an inhabitant; provided also that no imposition, duties or restriction shall be laid by any State, on the property of the United States, or either of them.

If any person guilty of, or charged with, treason, felony, or other high misdemeanor in any State, shall flee from justice, and be found in any of the United States, he shall, upon demand of the Governor or executive power of the State from which he fled, be delivered up and removed to the State having jurisdiction of his offense.

Full faith and credit shall be given in each of these States to the records, acts, and judicial proceedings of the courts and magistrates of every other State.

Article V. For the most convenient management of the general interests of the United States, delegates shall be annually appointed in such manner as the legislatures of each State shall direct, to meet in Congress on the first Monday in November, in every

year, with a power reserved to each State to recall its delegates, or any of them, at any time within the year, and to send others in their stead for the remainder of the year.

No State shall be represented in Congress by less than two, nor more than seven members; and no person shall be capable of being a delegate for more than three years in any term of six years; nor shall any person, being a delegate, be capable of holding any office under the United States, for which he, or another for his benefit, receives any salary, fees or emolument of any kind.

Each State shall maintain its own delegates in a meeting of the States, and while they act as members of the committee of the States.

In determining questions in the United States in Congress assembled, each State shall have one vote.

Freedom of speech and debate in Congress shall not be impeached or questioned in any court or place out of Congress, and the members of Congress shall be protected in their persons from arrests or imprisonments, during the time of their going to and from, and attendance on Congress, except for treason, felony, or breach of the peace.

Article VI. No State, without the consent of the United States in Congress assembled, shall send any embassy to, or receive any embassy from, or enter into any conference, agreement, alliance or treaty with any King, Prince or State; nor shall any person holding any office of profit or trust under the United States, or any of them, accept any present, emolument, office or title of any kind whatever from any King, Prince or foreign State; nor shall the United States in Congress assembled, or any of them, grant any title of nobility.

No two or more States shall enter into any treaty, confederation or alliance whatever between them, without the consent of the United States in Congress assembled, specifying accurately the purposes for which the same is to be entered into, and how long it shall continue.

No State shall lay any imposts or duties, which may interfere with any stipulations in treaties, entered into by the United States in Congress assembled, with any King, Prince or State, in pursuance of any treaties already proposed by Congress, to the courts of France and Spain.

No vessel of war shall be kept up in time of peace by any State, except such number only, as shall be deemed necessary by the United States in Congress assembled, for the defense of such State, or its trade; nor shall any body of forces be kept up by any State in time of peace, except such number only, as in the judgement of the United States in Congress assembled, shall be deemed requisite to garrison the forts necessary for the defense of such State; but every State shall always keep up a well-regulated and disciplined militia, sufficiently armed and accoutered, and shall provide and constantly have ready for use, in public stores, a due number of filed pieces and tents, and a proper quantity of arms, ammunition and camp equipage.

No State shall engage in any war without the consent of the United States in Congress assembled, unless such State be actually invaded by enemies, or shall have received certain advice of a resolution being formed by some nation of Indians to invade such State, and the danger is so imminent as not to admit of a delay till the United States in Congress assembled can be consulted; nor shall any State grant commissions to any ships or vessels of war, nor letters of marque or reprisal, except it be after a declaration of war by the United States in Congress assembled, and then only against the Kingdom or State and the subjects thereof, against which war has been so declared, and under

such regulations as shall be established by the United States in Congress assembled, unless such State be infested by pirates, in which case vessels of war may be fitted out for that occasion, and kept so long as the danger shall continue, or until the United States in Congress assembled shall determine otherwise.

Article VII. When land forces are raised by any State for the common defense, all officers of or under the rank of colonel, shall be appointed by the legislature of each State respectively, by whom such forces shall be raised, or in such manner as such State shall direct, and all vacancies shall be filled up by the State which first made the appointment.

Article VIII. All charges of war, and all other expenses that shall be incurred for the common defense or general welfare, and allowed by the United States in Congress assembled, shall be defrayed out of a common treasury, which shall be supplied by the several States in proportion to the value of all land within each State, granted or surveyed for any person, as such land and the buildings and improvements thereon shall be estimated according to such mode as the United States in Congress assembled, shall from time to time direct and appoint. The taxes for paying that proportion shall be laid and levied by the authority and direction of the legislatures of the several States within the time agreed upon by the United States in Congress assembled.

Article IX. The United States in Congress assembled, shall have the sole and exclusive right and power of determining on peace and war, except in the cases mentioned in the sixth article — of sending and receiving ambassadors — entering into treaties and alliances, provided that no treaty of commerce shall be made whereby the legislative power of the respective States shall be restrained from imposing such imposts and duties on foreigners, as their own people are subjected to, or from prohibiting the exportation or importation of any species of goods or commodities whatsoever — of establishing rules for deciding in all cases, what captures on land or water shall be legal, and in what manner prizes taken by land or naval forces in the service of the United States shall be divided or appropriated — of granting letters of marque and reprisal in times of peace — appointing courts for the trial of piracies and felonies committed on the high seas and establishing courts for receiving and determining finally appeals in all cases of captures, provided that no member of Congress shall be appointed a judge of any of the said courts.

The United States in Congress assembled shall also be the last resort on appeal in all disputes and differences now subsisting or that hereafter may arise between two or more States concerning boundary, jurisdiction or any other causes whatever; which authority shall always be exercised in the manner following. Whenever the legislative or executive authority or lawful agent of any State in controversy with another shall present a petition to Congress stating the matter in question and praying for a hearing, notice thereof shall be given by order of Congress to the legislative or executive authority of the other State in controversy, and a day assigned for the appearance of the parties by their lawful agents, who shall then be directed to appoint by joint consent, commissioners or judges to constitute a court for hearing and determining the matter in question: but if they cannot agree, Congress shall name three persons out of each of the United States, and from the list of such persons each party shall alternately strike out one, the petitioners beginning, until the number shall be reduced to thirteen; and from that number not less than seven, nor more than nine names as Congress shall direct, shall in the presence of Congress be drawn out by lot, and the persons whose names shall be so drawn or any five of them, shall be commissioners or judges, to hear and finally determine the controversy, so always as a major part of the judges who shall hear the cause shall agree in the determination: and if either party shall neglect to attend at the day appointed, without showing reasons, which Congress shall judge

sufficient, or being present shall refuse to strike, the Congress shall proceed to nominate three persons out of each State, and the secretary of Congress shall strike in behalf of such party absent or refusing; and the judgment and sentence of the court to be appointed, in the manner before prescribed, shall be final and conclusive; and if any of the parties shall refuse to submit to the authority of such court, or to appear or defend their claim or cause, the court shall nevertheless proceed to pronounce sentence, or judgment, which shall in like manner be final and decisive, the judgment or sentence and other proceedings being in either case transmitted to Congress, and lodged among the acts of Congress for the security of the parties concerned: provided that every commissioner, before he sits in judgment, shall take an oath to be administered by one of the judges of the supreme or superior court of the State, where the cause shall be tried, 'well and truly to hear and determine the matter in question, according to the best of his judgment, without favor, affection or hope of reward': provided also, that no State shall be deprived of territory for the benefit of the United States.

All controversies concerning the private right of soil claimed under different grants of two or more States, whose jurisdictions as they may respect such lands, and the States which passed such grants are adjusted, the said grants or either of them being at the same time claimed to have originated antecedent to such settlement of jurisdiction, shall on the petition of either party to the Congress of the United States, be finally determined as near as may be in the same manner as is before prescribed for deciding disputes respecting territorial jurisdiction between different States.

The United States in Congress assembled shall also have the sole and exclusive right and power of regulating the alloy and value of coin struck by their own authority, or by that of the respective States — fixing the standards of weights and measures throughout the United States — regulating the trade and managing all affairs with the Indians, not members of any of the States, provided that the legislative right of any State within its own limits be not infringed or violated — establishing or regulating post offices from one State to another, throughout all the United States, and exacting such postage on the papers passing through the same as may be requisite to defray the expenses of the said office — appointing all officers of the land forces, in the service of the United States, excepting regimental officers — appointing all the officers of the naval forces, and commissioning all officers whatever in the service of the United States — making rules for the government and regulation of the said land and naval forces, and directing their operations.

The United States in Congress assembled shall have authority to appoint a committee, to sit in the recess of Congress, to be denominated 'A Committee of the States', and to consist of one delegate from each State; and to appoint such other committees and civil officers as may be necessary for managing the general affairs of the United States under their direction — to appoint one of their members to preside, provided that no person be allowed to serve in the office of president more than one year in any term of three years; to ascertain the necessary sums of money to be raised for the service of the United States, and to appropriate and apply the same for defraying the public expenses — to borrow money, or emit bills on the credit of the United States, transmitting every half-year to the respective States an account of the sums of money so borrowed or emitted — to build and equip a navy — to agree upon the number of land forces, and to make requisitions from each State for its quota, in proportion to the number of white inhabitants in such State; which requisition shall be binding, and thereupon the legislature of each State shall appoint the regimental officers, raise the men and cloath, arm and equip them in a solid- like manner, at the expense of the United States; and the officers and men so clothed, armed and equipped shall march to the place appointed, and within the time agreed on by the United States in Congress assembled. But if the United States in Congress assembled shall, on consideration of

circumstances judge proper that any State should not raise men, or should raise a smaller number of men than the quota thereof, such extra number shall be raised, officered, cloathed, armed and equipped in the same manner as the quota of each State, unless the legislature of such State shall judge that such extra number cannot be safely spread out in the same, in which case they shall raise, officer, cloath, arm and equip as many of such extra number as they judge can be safely spared. And the officers and men so cloathed, armed, and equipped, shall march to the place appointed, and within the time agreed on by the United States in Congress assembled.

The United States in Congress assembled shall never engage in a war, nor grant letters of marque or reprisal in time of peace, nor enter into any treaties or alliances, nor coin money, nor regulate the value thereof, nor ascertain the sums and expenses necessary for the defense and welfare of the United States, or any of them, nor emit bills, nor borrow money on the credit of the United States, nor appropriate money, nor agree upon the number of vessels of war, to be built or purchased, or the number of land or sea forces to be raised, nor appoint a commander in chief of the army or navy, unless nine States assent to the same: nor shall a question on any other point, except for adjourning from day to day be determined, unless by the votes of the majority of the United States in Congress assembled.

The Congress of the United States shall have power to adjourn to any time within the year, and to any place within the United States, so that no period of adjournment be for a longer duration than the space of six months, and shall publish the journal of their proceedings monthly, except such parts thereof relating to treaties, alliances or military operations, as in their judgement require secrecy; and the yeas and nays of the delegates of each State on any question shall be entered on the journal, when it is desired by any delegates of a State, or any of them, at his or their request shall be furnished with a transcript of the said journal, except such parts as are above excepted, to lay before the legislatures of the several States.

Article X. The Committee of the States, or any nine of them, shall be authorized to execute, in the recess of Congress, such of the powers of Congress as the United States in Congress assembled, by the consent of the nine States, shall from time to time think expedient to vest them with; provided that no power be delegated to the said Committee, for the exercise of which, by the Articles of Confederation, the voice of nine States in the Congress of the United States assembled be requisite.

Article XI. Canada acceding to this confederation, and adjoining in the measures of the United States, shall be admitted into, and entitled to all the advantages of this Union; but no other colony shall be admitted into the same, unless such admission be agreed to by nine States.

Article XII. All bills of credit emitted, monies borrowed, and debts contracted by, or under the authority of Congress, before the assembling of the United States, in pursuance of the present confederation, shall be deemed and considered as a charge against the United States, for payment and satisfaction whereof the said United States, and the public faith are hereby solemnly pledged.

Article XIII. Every State shall abide by the determination of the United States in Congress assembled, on all questions which by this confederation are submitted to them. And the Articles of this Confederation shall be inviolably observed by every State, and the Union shall be perpetual; nor shall any alteration at any time hereafter be made in any of them; unless such alteration be agreed to in a Congress of the United States, and be afterwards confirmed by the legislatures of every State.

And Whereas it hath pleased the Great Governor of the World to incline the hearts of the legislatures we respectively represent in Congress, to approve of, and to authorize us to ratify the said Articles of Confederation and perpetual Union. Know Ye that we the undersigned delegates, by virtue of the power and authority to us given for that purpose, do by these presents, in the name and in behalf of our respective constituents, fully and entirely ratify and confirm each and every of the said Articles of Confederation and perpetual Union, and all and singular the matters and things therein contained: And we do further solemnly plight and engage the faith of our respective constituents, that they shall abide by the determinations of the United States in Congress assembled, on all questions, which by the said Confederation are submitted to them. And that the Articles thereof shall be inviolably observed by the States we respectively represent, and that the Union shall be perpetual.

In Witness whereof we have hereunto set our hands in Congress. Done at Philadelphia in the State of Pennsylvania the ninth day of July in the Year of our Lord One Thousand Seven Hundred and Seventy-Eight, and in the Third Year of the independence of America.

On the part and behalf of the State of New Hampshire:  
Josiah Bartlett, John Wentworth Junior. August 8th 1778

On the part and behalf of The State of Massachusetts Bay:  
John Hancock, Samuel Adams, Elbridge Gerry, Francis Dana, James Lovell, Samuel Holten

On the part and behalf of the State of Rhode Island and Providence Plantations:  
William Ellery, Henry Marchant, John Collins

On the part and behalf of the State of Connecticut:  
Roger Sherman, Samuel Huntington, Oliver Wolcott, Titus Hosmer,  
Andrew Adams

On the part and behalf of the State of New York:  
James Duane, Francis Lewis, William Duer, Gouv Morris

On the part and behalf of the State of New Jersey: November 26, 1778.  
John Witherspoon, Nathan Scudder

On the part and behalf of the State of Pennsylvania:  
Robert Morris, Daniel Roberdeau, John Bayard Smith, William Clingan,  
Joseph Reed 22nd July 1778

On the part and behalf of the State of Delaware:  
Thomas Mckean February 12, 1779, John Dickinson May 5th 1779,  
Nicholas Van Dyke

On the part and behalf of the State of Maryland:  
John Hanson March 1 1781, Daniel Carroll

On the part and behalf of the State of Virginia:  
Richard Henry Lee, John Banister, Thomas Adams, John Harvie,  
Francis Lightfoot Lee

On the part and behalf of the State of No Carolina:  
John Penn July 21st 1778, Cornelius Harnett, John Williams



On the part and behalf of the State of South Carolina:

Henry Laurens, William Henry Drayton, John Mathews, Richard Hutson,  
Thomas Heyward Junior

On the part and behalf of the State of Georgia:

John Walton 24th July 1778, Edward Telfair, Edward Langworthy



# Appendix E The Constitution of the United States of America

---

The Constitution of the United States: A Transcription

Note: The following text is a transcription of the Constitution in its original form. Items that are hyperlinked have since been amended or superseded.

*We the People of the United States, in Order to form a more perfect Union, establish Justice, insure domestic Tranquility, provide for the common defence, promote the general Welfare, and secure the Blessings of Liberty to ourselves and our Posterity, do ordain and establish this Constitution for the United States of America.*

## **Article. I.**

### Section. 1.

All legislative Powers herein granted shall be vested in a Congress of the United States, which shall consist of a Senate and House of Representatives.

### Section. 2.

The House of Representatives shall be composed of Members chosen every second Year by the People of the several States, and the Electors in each State shall have the Qualifications requisite for Electors of the most numerous Branch of the State Legislature.

No Person shall be a Representative who shall not have attained to the Age of twenty five Years, and been seven Years a Citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an Inhabitant of that State in which he shall be chosen.

Representatives and direct Taxes shall be apportioned among the several States which may be included within this Union, according to their respective Numbers, which shall be determined by adding to the whole Number of free Persons, including those bound to Service for a Term of Years, and excluding Indians not taxed, three fifths of all other Persons. The actual Enumeration shall be made within three Years after the first Meeting of the Congress of the United States, and within every subsequent Term of ten Years, in such Manner as they shall by Law direct. The Number of Representatives shall not exceed one for every thirty Thousand, but each State shall have at Least one Representative; and until such enumeration shall be made, the State of New Hampshire shall be entitled to chuse three, Massachusetts eight, Rhode-Island and Providence Plantations one, Connecticut five, New-York six, New Jersey four, Pennsylvania eight, Delaware one, Maryland six, Virginia ten, North Carolina five, South Carolina five, and Georgia three.

When vacancies happen in the Representation from any State, the Executive Authority thereof shall issue Writs of Election to fill such Vacancies.

The House of Representatives shall chuse their Speaker and other Officers; and shall have the sole Power of Impeachment.

Section. 3.

The Senate of the United States shall be composed of two Senators from each State, chosen by the Legislature thereof for six Years; and each Senator shall have one Vote.

Immediately after they shall be assembled in Consequence of the first Election, they shall be divided as equally as may be into three Classes. The Seats of the Senators of the first Class shall be vacated at the Expiration of the second Year, of the second Class at the Expiration of the fourth Year, and of the third Class at the Expiration of the sixth Year, so that one third may be chosen every second Year; and if Vacancies happen by Resignation, or otherwise, during the Recess of the Legislature of any State, the Executive thereof may make temporary Appointments until the next Meeting of the Legislature, which shall then fill such Vacancies.

No Person shall be a Senator who shall not have attained to the Age of thirty Years, and been nine Years a Citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an Inhabitant of that State for which he shall be chosen.

The Vice President of the United States shall be President of the Senate, but shall have no Vote, unless they be equally divided.

The Senate shall chuse their other Officers, and also a President pro tempore, in the Absence of the Vice President, or when he shall exercise the Office of President of the United States.

The Senate shall have the sole Power to try all Impeachments. When sitting for that Purpose, they shall be on Oath or Affirmation. When the President of the United States is tried, the Chief Justice shall preside: And no Person shall be convicted without the Concurrence of two thirds of the Members present.

Judgment in Cases of Impeachment shall not extend further than to removal from Office, and disqualification to hold and enjoy any Office of honor, Trust or Profit under the United States: but the Party convicted shall nevertheless be liable and subject to Indictment, Trial, Judgment and Punishment, according to Law.

Section. 4.

The Times, Places and Manner of holding Elections for Senators and Representatives, shall be prescribed in each State by the Legislature thereof; but the Congress may at any time by Law make or alter such Regulations, except as to the Places of chusing Senators.

The Congress shall assemble at least once in every Year, and such Meeting shall be on the first Monday in December, unless they shall by Law appoint a different Day.

Section. 5.

Each House shall be the Judge of the Elections, Returns and Qualifications of its own Members, and a Majority of each shall constitute a Quorum to do Business; but a smaller Number may adjourn from day to day, and may be authorized to compel the Attendance of absent Members, in such Manner, and under such Penalties as each House may provide.

Each House may determine the Rules of its Proceedings, punish its Members for disorderly Behaviour, and, with the Concurrence of two thirds, expel a Member.

Each House shall keep a Journal of its Proceedings, and from time to time publish the same, excepting such Parts as may in their Judgment require Secrecy; and the Yeas and Nays of the Members of either House on any question shall, at the Desire of one fifth of those Present, be entered on the Journal.

Neither House, during the Session of Congress, shall, without the Consent of the other, adjourn for more than three days, nor to any other Place than that in which the two Houses shall be sitting.

#### Section. 6.

The Senators and Representatives shall receive a Compensation for their Services, to be ascertained by Law, and paid out of the Treasury of the United States. They shall in all Cases, except Treason, Felony and Breach of the Peace, be privileged from Arrest during their Attendance at the Session of their respective Houses, and in going to and returning from the same; and for any Speech or Debate in either House, they shall not be questioned in any other Place.

No Senator or Representative shall, during the Time for which he was elected, be appointed to any civil Office under the Authority of the United States, which shall have been created, or the Emoluments whereof shall have been encreased during such time; and no Person holding any Office under the United States, shall be a Member of either House during his Continuance in Office.

#### Section. 7.

All Bills for raising Revenue shall originate in the House of Representatives; but the Senate may propose or concur with Amendments as on other Bills.

Every Bill which shall have passed the House of Representatives and the Senate, shall, before it become a Law, be presented to the President of the United States: If he approve he shall sign it, but if not he shall return it, with his Objections to that House in which it shall have originated, who shall enter the Objections at large on their Journal, and proceed to reconsider it. If after such Reconsideration two thirds of that House shall agree to pass the Bill, it shall be sent, together with the Objections, to the other House, by which it shall likewise be reconsidered, and if approved by two thirds of that House, it shall become a Law. But in all such Cases the Votes of both Houses shall be determined by yeas and Nays, and the Names of the Persons voting for and against the Bill shall be entered on the Journal of each House respectively. If any Bill shall not be returned by the President within ten Days (Sundays excepted) after it shall have been presented to him, the Same shall be a Law, in like Manner as if he had signed it, unless the Congress by their Adjournment prevent its Return, in which Case it shall not be a Law.

Every Order, Resolution, or Vote to which the Concurrence of the Senate and House of Representatives may be necessary (except on a question of Adjournment) shall be presented to the President of the United States; and before the Same shall take Effect, shall be approved by him, or being disapproved by him, shall be repassed by two thirds of the Senate and House of Representatives, according to the Rules and Limitations prescribed in the Case of a Bill.

#### Section. 8.

The Congress shall have Power To lay and collect Taxes, Duties, Imposts and Excises, to pay the Debts and provide for the common Defence and general Welfare of the United States; but all Duties, Imposts and Excises shall be uniform throughout the United States;

\*To borrow Money on the credit of the United States;

- \*To regulate Commerce with foreign Nations, and among the several States, and with the Indian Tribes;
- \*To establish an uniform Rule of Naturalization, and uniform Laws on the subject of Bankruptcies throughout the United States;
- \*To coin Money, regulate the Value thereof, and of foreign Coin, and fix the Standard of Weights and Measures;
- \*To provide for the Punishment of counterfeiting the Securities and current Coin of the United States;
- \*To establish Post Offices and post Roads;
- \*To promote the Progress of Science and useful Arts, by securing for limited Times to Authors and Inventors the exclusive Right to their respective Writings and Discoveries;
- \*To constitute Tribunals inferior to the supreme Court;
- \*To define and punish Piracies and Felonies committed on the high Seas, and Offences against the Law of Nations;
- \*To declare War, grant Letters of Marque and Reprisal, and make Rules concerning Captures on Land and Water;
- \*To raise and support Armies, but no Appropriation of Money to that Use shall be for a longer Term than two Years;
- \*To provide and maintain a Navy;
- \*To make Rules for the Government and Regulation of the land and naval Forces;
- \*To provide for calling forth the Militia to execute the Laws of the Union, suppress Insurrections and repel Invasions;
- \*To provide for organizing, arming, and disciplining, the Militia, and for governing such Part of them as may be employed in the Service of the United States, reserving to the States respectively, the Appointment of the Officers, and the Authority of training the Militia according to the discipline prescribed by Congress;
- \*To exercise exclusive Legislation in all Cases whatsoever, over such District (not exceeding ten Miles square) as may, by Cession of particular States, and the Acceptance of Congress, become the Seat of the Government of the United States, and to exercise like Authority over all Places purchased by the Consent of the Legislature of the State in which the Same shall be, for the Erection of Forts, Magazines, Arsenals, dock-Yards, and other needful Buildings;--And
- \*To make all Laws which shall be necessary and proper for carrying into Execution the foregoing Powers, and all other Powers vested by this Constitution in the Government of the United States, or in any Department or Officer thereof.

#### Section. 9.

The Migration or Importation of such Persons as any of the States now existing shall think proper to admit, shall not be prohibited by the Congress prior to the Year one thousand eight hundred and eight, but a Tax or duty may be imposed on such Importation, not exceeding ten dollars for each Person.

The Privilege of the Writ of Habeas Corpus shall not be suspended, unless when in Cases of Rebellion or Invasion the public Safety may require it.

No Bill of Attainder or ex post facto Law shall be passed.

No Capitation, or other direct, Tax shall be laid, unless in Proportion to the Census or enumeration herein before directed to be taken.

No Tax or Duty shall be laid on Articles exported from any State.

No Preference shall be given by any Regulation of Commerce or Revenue to the Ports of one State over those of another; nor shall Vessels bound to, or from, one State, be obliged to enter, clear, or pay Duties in another.

No Money shall be drawn from the Treasury, but in Consequence of Appropriations made by Law; and a regular Statement and Account of the Receipts and Expenditures of all public Money shall be published from time to time.

No Title of Nobility shall be granted by the United States: And no Person holding any Office of Profit or Trust under them, shall, without the Consent of the Congress, accept of any present, Emolument, Office, or Title, of any kind whatever, from any King, Prince, or foreign State.

Section. 10.

No State shall enter into any Treaty, Alliance, or Confederation; grant Letters of Marque and Reprisal; coin Money; emit Bills of Credit; make any Thing but gold and silver Coin a Tender in Payment of Debts; pass any Bill of Attainder, ex post facto Law, or Law impairing the Obligation of Contracts, or grant any Title of Nobility.

No State shall, without the Consent of the Congress, lay any Imposts or Duties on Imports or Exports, except what may be absolutely necessary for executing it's inspection Laws: and the net Produce of all Duties and Imposts, laid by any State on Imports or Exports, shall be for the Use of the Treasury of the United States; and all such Laws shall be subject to the Revision and Controul of the Congress.

No State shall, without the Consent of Congress, lay any Duty of Tonnage, keep Troops, or Ships of War in time of Peace, enter into any Agreement or Compact with another State, or with a foreign Power, or engage in War, unless actually invaded, or in such imminent Danger as will not admit of delay.

## **Article. II.**

Section. 1.

The executive Power shall be vested in a President of the United States of America. He shall hold his Office during the Term of four Years, and, together with the Vice President, chosen for the same Term, be elected, as follows:

Each State shall appoint, in such Manner as the Legislature thereof may direct, a Number of Electors, equal to the whole Number of Senators and Representatives to which the State may be entitled in the Congress: but no Senator or Representative, or Person holding an Office of Trust or Profit under the United States, shall be appointed an Elector.

The Electors shall meet in their respective States, and vote by Ballot for two Persons, of whom one at least shall not be an Inhabitant of the same State with themselves. And they shall make a List of all the Persons voted for, and of the Number of Votes for each; which List they shall sign and certify, and transmit sealed to the Seat of the Government of the United States, directed to the President of the Senate. The President of the Senate shall, in the Presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the Certificates, and the Votes shall then be counted. The Person having the greatest Number of Votes shall be the President, if such Number be a Majority of the whole Number of Electors appointed; and if there be more than one who have such Majority, and have an equal Number of Votes, then the House of Representatives shall immediately chuse by Ballot one of them for President; and if no Person have a Majority, then from the five highest on the List the said House shall in like Manner chuse the President. But in chusing the President, the Votes shall be taken by States, the Representation from each State having one Vote; A quorum for this purpose shall consist of a Member or Members from two thirds of the States, and a Majority of all the States shall be necessary to a Choice. In every Case, after the Choice of the President, the Person having the greatest Number of Votes of the

Electors shall be the Vice President. But if there should remain two or more who have equal Votes, the Senate shall chuse from them by Ballot the Vice President.

The Congress may determine the Time of chusing the Electors, and the Day on which they shall give their Votes; which Day shall be the same throughout the United States.

No Person except a natural born Citizen, or a Citizen of the United States, at the time of the Adoption of this Constitution, shall be eligible to the Office of President; neither shall any Person be eligible to that Office who shall not have attained to the Age of thirty five Years, and been fourteen Years a Resident within the United States.

In Case of the Removal of the President from Office, or of his Death, Resignation, or Inability to discharge the Powers and Duties of the said Office, the Same shall devolve on the Vice President, and the Congress may by Law provide for the Case of Removal, Death, Resignation or Inability, both of the President and Vice President, declaring what Officer shall then act as President, and such Officer shall act accordingly, until the Disability be removed, or a President shall be elected.

The President shall, at stated Times, receive for his Services, a Compensation, which shall neither be increased nor diminished during the Period for which he shall have been elected, and he shall not receive within that Period any other Emolument from the United States, or any of them.

Before he enter on the Execution of his Office, he shall take the following Oath or Affirmation:--"I do solemnly swear (or affirm) that I will faithfully execute the Office of President of the United States, and will to the best of my Ability, preserve, protect and defend the Constitution of the United States."

#### Section. 2.

The President shall be Commander in Chief of the Army and Navy of the United States, and of the Militia of the several States, when called into the actual Service of the United States; he may require the Opinion, in writing, of the principal Officer in each of the executive Departments, upon any Subject relating to the Duties of their respective Offices, and he shall have Power to grant Reprieves and Pardons for Offences against the United States, except in Cases of Impeachment.

He shall have Power, by and with the Advice and Consent of the Senate, to make Treaties, provided two thirds of the Senators present concur; and he shall nominate, and by and with the Advice and Consent of the Senate, shall appoint Ambassadors, other public Ministers and Consuls, Judges of the supreme Court, and all other Officers of the United States, whose Appointments are not herein otherwise provided for, and which shall be established by Law: but the Congress may by Law vest the Appointment of such inferior Officers, as they think proper, in the President alone, in the Courts of Law, or in the Heads of Departments.

The President shall have Power to fill up all Vacancies that may happen during the Recess of the Senate, by granting Commissions which shall expire at the End of their next Session.

#### Section. 3.

He shall from time to time give to the Congress Information of the State of the Union, and recommend to their Consideration such Measures as he shall judge necessary and expedient; he may, on extraordinary Occasions, convene both Houses, or either of them, and in Case of Disagreement between them, with Respect to the Time of Adjournment, he may adjourn them to such Time as he shall think proper; he shall



receive Ambassadors and other public Ministers; he shall take Care that the Laws be faithfully executed, and shall Commission all the Officers of the United States.

Section. 4.

The President, Vice President and all civil Officers of the United States, shall be removed from Office on Impeachment for, and Conviction of, Treason, Bribery, or other high Crimes and Misdemeanors.

## **Article III.**

Section. 1.

The judicial Power of the United States shall be vested in one supreme Court, and in such inferior Courts as the Congress may from time to time ordain and establish. The Judges, both of the supreme and inferior Courts, shall hold their Offices during good Behaviour, and shall, at stated Times, receive for their Services a Compensation, which shall not be diminished during their Continuance in Office.

Section. 2.

The judicial Power shall extend to all Cases, in Law and Equity, arising under this Constitution, the Laws of the United States, and Treaties made, or which shall be made, under their Authority;--to all Cases affecting Ambassadors, other public Ministers and Consuls;--to all Cases of admiralty and maritime Jurisdiction;--to Controversies to which the United States shall be a Party;--to Controversies between two or more States;-- between a State and Citizens of another State;--between Citizens of different States;--between Citizens of the same State claiming Lands under Grants of different States, and between a State, or the Citizens thereof, and foreign States, Citizens or Subjects.

In all Cases affecting Ambassadors, other public Ministers and Consuls, and those in which a State shall be Party, the supreme Court shall have original Jurisdiction. In all the other Cases before mentioned, the supreme Court shall have appellate Jurisdiction, both as to Law and Fact, with such Exceptions, and under such Regulations as the Congress shall make.

The Trial of all Crimes, except in Cases of Impeachment, shall be by Jury; and such Trial shall be held in the State where the said Crimes shall have been committed; but when not committed within any State, the Trial shall be at such Place or Places as the Congress may by Law have directed.

Section. 3.

Treason against the United States, shall consist only in levying War against them, or in adhering to their Enemies, giving them Aid and Comfort. No Person shall be convicted of Treason unless on the Testimony of two Witnesses to the same overt Act, or on Confession in open Court.

The Congress shall have Power to declare the Punishment of Treason, but no Attainder of Treason shall work Corruption of Blood, or Forfeiture except during the Life of the Person attainted.

## **Article IV.**

Section. 1.

Full Faith and Credit shall be given in each State to the public Acts, Records, and judicial Proceedings of every other State. And the Congress may by general Laws prescribe the Manner in which such Acts, Records and Proceedings shall be proved, and the Effect thereof.

Section. 2.

The Citizens of each State shall be entitled to all Privileges and Immunities of Citizens in the several States.

A Person charged in any State with Treason, Felony, or other Crime, who shall flee from Justice, and be found in another State, shall on Demand of the executive Authority of the State from which he fled, be delivered up, to be removed to the State having Jurisdiction of the Crime.

No Person held to Service or Labour in one State, under the Laws thereof, escaping into another, shall, in Consequence of any Law or Regulation therein, be discharged from such Service or Labour, but shall be delivered up on Claim of the Party to whom such Service or Labour may be due.

Section. 3.

New States may be admitted by the Congress into this Union; but no new State shall be formed or erected within the Jurisdiction of any other State; nor any State be formed by the Junction of two or more States, or Parts of States, without the Consent of the Legislatures of the States concerned as well as of the Congress.

The Congress shall have Power to dispose of and make all needful Rules and Regulations respecting the Territory or other Property belonging to the United States; and nothing in this Constitution shall be so construed as to Prejudice any Claims of the United States, or of any particular State.

Section. 4.

The United States shall guarantee to every State in this Union a Republican Form of Government, and shall protect each of them against Invasion; and on Application of the Legislature, or of the Executive (when the Legislature cannot be convened), against domestic Violence.

## Article. V.

The Congress, whenever two thirds of both Houses shall deem it necessary, shall propose Amendments to this Constitution, or, on the Application of the Legislatures of two thirds of the several States, shall call a Convention for proposing Amendments, which, in either Case, shall be valid to all Intents and Purposes, as Part of this Constitution, when ratified by the Legislatures of three fourths of the several States, or by Conventions in three fourths thereof, as the one or the other Mode of Ratification may be proposed by the Congress; Provided that no Amendment which may be made prior to the Year One thousand eight hundred and eight shall in any Manner affect the first and fourth Clauses in the Ninth Section of the first Article; and that no State, without its Consent, shall be deprived of its equal Suffrage in the Senate.

## Article. VI.

All Debts contracted and Engagements entered into, before the Adoption of this Constitution, shall be as valid against the United States under this Constitution, as under the Confederation.

This Constitution, and the Laws of the United States which shall be made in Pursuance thereof; and all Treaties made, or which shall be made, under the Authority of the United States, shall be the supreme Law of the Land; and the Judges in every State shall be bound thereby, any Thing in the Constitution or Laws of any State to the Contrary notwithstanding.

The Senators and Representatives before mentioned, and the Members of the several State Legislatures, and all executive and judicial Officers, both of the United States and of the several States, shall be bound by Oath or Affirmation, to support this Constitution; but no religious Test shall ever be required as a Qualification to any Office or public Trust under the United States.

## **Article. VII.**

The Ratification of the Conventions of nine States, shall be sufficient for the Establishment of this Constitution between the States so ratifying the Same.

The Word, "the," being interlined between the seventh and eighth Lines of the first Page, the Word "Thirty" being partly written on an Erasure in the fifteenth Line of the first Page, The Words "is tried" being interlined between the thirty second and thirty third Lines of the first Page and the Word "the" being interlined between the forty third and forty fourth Lines of the second Page.

Attest William Jackson Secretary

Done in Convention by the Unanimous Consent of the States present the Seventeenth Day of September in the Year of our Lord one thousand seven hundred and Eighty seven and of the Independence of the United States of America the Twelfth In witness whereof We have hereunto subscribed our Names,

George Washington  
President and Deputy from Virginia

### **Delaware**

Geo Read, Gunning Bedford, John Dickinson, Richard Bassett, Jaco Broom

### **Maryland**

James McHenry, Dan of St Thos. Jenifer Daniel Carroll

### **Virginia**

John Blair, James Madison Jr.

### **North Carolina**

William Blount, Richard Dobbs Spaight, Hume Williamson

### **South Carolina**

J. Rutledge, Charles Cotesworth Pinckney, Charles Pinckney, Pierce Butler

### **Georgia**

William Few, Abraham Baldwin

### **New Hampshire**

John Langdon, Nicholas Gilman,

### **Massachusetts**

Nathaniel Gorham, Rufus King

### **Connecticut**

William. Samuel Johnson, Roger Sherman

### **New York**

Alexander Hamilton,

**New Jersey**

William Livingston, David Brearley, William Paterson, Jonathan Dayton

**Pennsylvania**

Ben Franklin, Thomas Mifflin, Robert. Morris, George. Clymer,  
Thomas. FitzSimons, Jared Ingersoll, James Wilson, Gouv Morris

[http://www.archives.gov/national-archives-experience/charters/constitution\\_transcript.html](http://www.archives.gov/national-archives-experience/charters/constitution_transcript.html)

# Appendix F The Bill of Rights & Constitutional Amendments

---

## The Preamble to the Bill of Rights

Congress of the United States -- begun and held at the City of New-York, on Wednesday the fourth of March, one thousand seven hundred and eighty nine.

THE Conventions of a number of the States, having at the time of their adopting the Constitution, expressed a desire, in order to prevent misconstruction or abuse of its powers, that further declaratory and restrictive clauses should be added: And as extending the ground of public confidence in the Government, will best ensure the beneficent ends of its institution.

RESOLVED by the Senate and House of Representatives of the United States of America, in Congress assembled, two thirds of both Houses concurring, that the following Articles be proposed to the Legislatures of the several States, as amendments to the Constitution of the United States, all, or any of which Articles, when ratified by three fourths of the said Legislatures, to be valid to all intents and purposes, as part of the said Constitution; viz.

ARTICLES in addition to, and Amendment of the Constitution of the United States of America, proposed by Congress, and ratified by the Legislatures of the several States, pursuant to the fifth Article of the original Constitution.

## The Bill of Rights: A Transcription

The Preamble to The Bill of Rights-- Congress of the United States, begun and held at the City of New-York, on Wednesday the fourth of March, one thousand seven hundred and eighty nine.

THE Conventions of a number of the States, having at the time of their adopting the Constitution, expressed a desire, in order to prevent misconstruction or abuse of its powers, that further declaratory and restrictive clauses should be added: And as extending the ground of public confidence in the Government, will best ensure the beneficent ends of its institution.

RESOLVED by the Senate and House of Representatives of the United States of America, in Congress assembled, two thirds of both Houses concurring, that the following Articles be proposed to the Legislatures of the several States, as amendments to the Constitution of the United States, all, or any of which Articles, when ratified by three fourths of the said Legislatures, to be valid to all intents and purposes, as part of the said Constitution; viz.

ARTICLES in addition to, and Amendment of the Constitution of the United States of America, proposed by Congress, and ratified by the Legislatures of the several States, pursuant to the fifth Article of the original Constitution.

Note: The following text is a transcription of the first ten amendments to the Constitution in their original form. These amendments were ratified December 15, 1791, and form what is known as the "Bill of Rights."

#### **Amendment I**

Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof; or abridging the freedom of speech, or of the press; or the right of the people peaceably to assemble, and to petition the Government for a redress of grievances.

#### **Amendment II**

A well regulated Militia, being necessary to the security of a free State, the right of the people to keep and bear Arms, shall not be infringed.

#### **Amendment III**

No Soldier shall, in time of peace be quartered in any house, without the consent of the Owner, nor in time of war, but in a manner to be prescribed by law.

#### **Amendment IV**

The right of the people to be secure in their persons, houses, papers, and effects, against unreasonable searches and seizures, shall not be violated, and no Warrants shall issue, but upon probable cause, supported by Oath or affirmation, and particularly describing the place to be searched, and the persons or things to be seized. [No fishing expeditions]

#### **Amendment V**

No person shall be held to answer for a capital, or otherwise infamous crime, unless on a presentment or indictment of a Grand Jury, except in cases arising in the land or naval forces, or in the Militia, when in actual service in time of War or public danger; nor shall any person be subject for the same offence to be twice put in jeopardy of life or limb; nor shall be compelled in any criminal case to be a witness against himself, nor be deprived of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law; nor shall private property be taken for public use, without just compensation.

#### **Amendment VI**

In all criminal prosecutions, the accused shall enjoy the right to a speedy and public trial, by an impartial jury of the State and district wherein the crime shall have been committed, which district shall have been previously ascertained by law, and to be informed of the nature and cause of the accusation; to be confronted with the witnesses against him; to have compulsory process for obtaining witnesses in his favor, and to have the Assistance of Counsel for his defence.

#### **Amendment VII**

In Suits at common law, where the value in controversy shall exceed twenty dollars, the right of trial by jury shall be preserved, and no fact tried by a jury, shall be otherwise re-examined in any Court of the United States, than according to the rules of the common law.

**Amendment VIII**

Excessive bail shall not be required, nor excessive fines imposed, nor cruel and unusual punishments inflicted.

**Amendment IX**

The enumeration in the Constitution, of certain rights, shall not be construed to deny or disparage others retained by the people.

**Amendment X**

The powers not delegated to the United States by the Constitution, nor prohibited by it to the States, are reserved to the States respectively, or to the people.

**The Constitution: Amendments 11-27**

Constitutional Amendments 1-10 above—make up what is known as The Bill of Rights. Amendments 11-27 are listed below.

**AMENDMENT XI**

Passed by Congress March 4, 1794. Ratified February 7, 1795.

**Note:** Article III, section 2, of the Constitution was modified by amendment 11.

The Judicial power of the United States shall not be construed to extend to any suit in law or equity, commenced or prosecuted against one of the United States by Citizens of another State, or by Citizens or Subjects of any Foreign State.

**AMENDMENT XII**

Passed by Congress December 9, 1803. Ratified June 15, 1804.

**Note:** A portion of Article II, section 1 of the Constitution was superseded by the 12th amendment.

The Electors shall meet in their respective states and vote by ballot for President and Vice-President, one of whom, at least, shall not be an inhabitant of the same state with themselves; they shall name in their ballots the person voted for as President, and in distinct ballots the person voted for as Vice-President, and they shall make distinct lists of all persons voted for as President, and of all persons voted for as Vice-President, and of the number of votes for each, which lists they shall sign and certify, and transmit sealed to the seat of the government of the United States, directed to the President of the Senate; -- the President of the Senate shall, in the presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the certificates and the votes shall then be counted; -- The person having the greatest number of votes for President, shall be the President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of Electors appointed; and if no person have such majority, then from the persons having the highest numbers not exceeding three on the list of those voted for as President, the House of

Representatives shall choose immediately, by ballot, the President. But in choosing the President, the votes shall be taken by states, the representation from each state having one vote; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two-thirds of the states, and a majority of all the states shall be necessary to a choice. [And if the House of Representatives shall not choose a President whenever the right of choice shall devolve upon them, before the fourth day of March next following, then the Vice-President shall act as President, as in case of the death or other constitutional disability of the President. --]\* The person having the greatest number of votes as Vice-

President, shall be the Vice-President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of Electors appointed, and if no person have a majority, then from the two highest numbers on the list, the Senate shall choose the Vice-President; a quorum for the purpose shall consist of two-thirds of the whole number of Senators, and a majority of the whole number shall be necessary to a choice. But no person constitutionally ineligible to the office of President shall be eligible to that of Vice-President of the United States.

**\*Later Superseded by section 3 of the 20th amendment.**

### **AMENDMENT XIII**

Passed by Congress January 31, 1865. Ratified December 6, 1865.

Note: A portion of Article IV, section 2, of the Constitution was superseded by the 13th amendment.

#### Section 1.

Neither slavery nor involuntary servitude, except as a punishment for crime whereof the party shall have been duly convicted, shall exist within the United States, or any place subject to their jurisdiction.

#### Section 2.

Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

### **AMENDMENT XIV**

Passed by Congress June 13, 1866. Ratified July 9, 1868.

**Note:** Article I, section 2, of the Constitution was modified by section 2 of the 14th amendment.

#### Section 1.

All persons born or naturalized in the United States, and subject to the jurisdiction thereof, are citizens of the United States and of the State wherein they reside. No State shall make or enforce any law which shall abridge the privileges or immunities of citizens of the United States; nor shall any State deprive any person of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law; nor deny to any person within its jurisdiction the equal protection of the laws.

#### Section 2.

Representatives shall be apportioned among the several States according to their respective numbers, counting the whole number of persons in each State, excluding Indians not taxed. But when the right to vote at any election for the choice of electors for President and Vice-President of the United States, Representatives in Congress, the Executive and Judicial officers of a State, or the members of the Legislature thereof, is denied to any of the male inhabitants of such State, being twenty-one years of age,\* and citizens of the United States, or in any way abridged, except for participation in rebellion, or other crime, the basis of representation therein shall be reduced in the proportion which the number of such male citizens shall bear to the whole number of male citizens twenty-one years of age in such State.

#### Section 3.

No person shall be a Senator or Representative in Congress, or elector of President and Vice-President, or hold any office, civil or military, under the United States, or under any State, who, having previously taken an oath, as a member of Congress, or as an officer of the United States, or as a member of any State legislature, or as an executive or judicial officer of any State, to support the Constitution of the United States, shall



have engaged in insurrection or rebellion against the same, or given aid or comfort to the enemies thereof. But Congress may by a vote of two-thirds of each House, remove such disability.

#### Section 4.

The validity of the public debt of the United States, authorized by law, including debts incurred for payment of pensions and bounties for services in suppressing insurrection or rebellion, shall not be questioned. But neither the United States nor any State shall assume or pay any debt or obligation incurred in aid of insurrection or rebellion against the United States, or any claim for the loss or emancipation of any slave; but all such debts, obligations and claims shall be held illegal and void.

#### Section 5.

The Congress shall have the power to enforce, by appropriate legislation, the provisions of this article.

**\*Later Changed by section 1 of the 26th amendment.**

### **AMENDMENT XV**

Passed by Congress February 26, 1869. Ratified February 3, 1870.

#### Section 1.

The right of citizens of the United States to vote shall not be denied or abridged by the United States or by any State on account of race, color, or previous condition of servitude--

#### Section 2.

The Congress shall have the power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

### **AMENDMENT XVI**

Passed by Congress July 2, 1909. Ratified February 3, 1913.

**Note:** Article I, section 9, of the Constitution was modified by amendment 16.

The Congress shall have power to lay and collect taxes on incomes, from whatever source derived, without apportionment among the several States, and without regard to any census or enumeration.

### **AMENDMENT XVII**

Passed by Congress May 13, 1912. Ratified April 8, 1913.

**Note:** Article I, section 3, of the Constitution was modified by the 17th amendment.

---The Senate of the United States shall be composed of two Senators from each State, elected by the people thereof, for six years; and each Senator shall have one vote. The electors in each State shall have the qualifications requisite for electors of the most numerous branch of the State legislatures.

---When vacancies happen in the representation of any State in the Senate, the executive authority of such State shall issue writs of election to fill such vacancies: Provided, That the legislature of any State may empower the executive thereof to make temporary appointments until the people fill the vacancies by election as the legislature may direct.

---This amendment shall not be so construed as to affect the election or term of any Senator chosen before it becomes valid as part of the Constitution.

### **AMENDMENT XVIII**

Passed by Congress December 18, 1917. Ratified January 16, 1919. Repealed by amendment 21.

Section 1.

After one year from the ratification of this article the manufacture, sale, or transportation of intoxicating liquors within, the importation thereof into, or the exportation thereof from the United States and all territory subject to the jurisdiction thereof for beverage purposes is hereby prohibited.

Section 2.

The Congress and the several States shall have concurrent power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

Section 3.

This article shall be inoperative unless it shall have been ratified as an amendment to the Constitution by the legislatures of the several States, as provided in the Constitution, within seven years from the date of the submission hereof to the States by the Congress.

**AMENDMENT XIX**

Passed by Congress June 4, 1919. Ratified August 18, 1920.

The right of citizens of the United States to vote shall not be denied or abridged by the United States or by any State on account of sex.

Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

**AMENDMENT XX**

Passed by Congress March 2, 1932. Ratified January 23, 1933.

**Note:** Article I, section 4, of the Constitution was modified by section 2 of this amendment. In addition, a portion of the 12th amendment was superseded by section 3.

Section 1.

The terms of the President and the Vice President shall end at noon on the 20th day of January, and the terms of Senators and Representatives at noon on the 3d day of January, of the years in which such terms would have ended if this article had not been ratified; and the terms of their successors shall then begin.

Section 2.

The Congress shall assemble at least once in every year, and such meeting shall begin at noon on the 3d day of January, unless they shall by law appoint a different day.

Section 3.

If, at the time fixed for the beginning of the term of the President, the President elect shall have died, the Vice President elect shall become President. If a President shall not have been chosen before the time fixed for the beginning of his term, or if the President elect shall have failed to qualify, then the Vice President elect shall act as President until a President shall have qualified; and the Congress may by law provide for the case wherein neither a President elect nor a Vice President shall have qualified, declaring who shall then act as President, or the manner in which one who is to act shall be selected, and such person shall act accordingly until a President or Vice President shall have qualified.

Section 4.

The Congress may by law provide for the case of the death of any of the persons from whom the House of Representatives may choose a President whenever the right of choice shall have devolved upon them, and for the case of the death of any of the persons from whom the Senate may choose a Vice President whenever the right of choice shall have devolved upon them.

## Section 5.

Sections 1 and 2 shall take effect on the 15th day of October following the ratification of this article.

## Section 6.

This article shall be inoperative unless it shall have been ratified as an amendment to the Constitution by the legislatures of three-fourths of the several States within seven years from the date of its submission.

**AMENDMENT XXI**

Passed by Congress February 20, 1933. Ratified December 5, 1933.

## Section 1.

The eighteenth article of amendment to the Constitution of the United States is hereby repealed.

## Section 2.

The transportation or importation into any State, Territory, or Possession of the United States for delivery or use therein of intoxicating liquors, in violation of the laws thereof, is hereby prohibited.

## Section 3.

This article shall be inoperative unless it shall have been ratified as an amendment to the Constitution by conventions in the several States, as provided in the Constitution, within seven years from the date of the submission hereof to the States by the Congress.

**AMENDMENT XXII**

Passed by Congress March 21, 1947. Ratified February 27, 1951.

## Section 1.

No person shall be elected to the office of the President more than twice, and no person who has held the office of President, or acted as President, for more than two years of a term to which some other person was elected President shall be elected to the office of President more than once. But this Article shall not apply to any person holding the office of President when this Article was proposed by Congress, and shall not prevent any person who may be holding the office of President, or acting as President, during the term within which this Article becomes operative from holding the office of President or acting as President during the remainder of such term.

## Section 2.

This article shall be inoperative unless it shall have been ratified as an amendment to the Constitution by the legislatures of three-fourths of the several States within seven years from the date of its submission to the States by the Congress.

**AMENDMENT XXIII**

Passed by Congress June 16, 1960. Ratified March 29, 1961.

## Section 1.

The District constituting the seat of Government of the United States shall appoint in such manner as Congress may direct:

---A number of electors of President and Vice President equal to the whole number of Senators and Representatives in Congress to which the District would be entitled if it were a State, but in no event more than the least populous State; they shall be in addition to those appointed by the States, but they shall be considered, for the purposes of the election of President and Vice President, to be electors appointed by a

State; and they shall meet in the District and perform such duties as provided by the twelfth article of amendment.

Section 2.

The Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

#### **AMENDMENT XXIV**

Passed by Congress August 27, 1962. Ratified January 23, 1964.

Section 1.

The right of citizens of the United States to vote in any primary or other election for President or Vice President, for electors for President or Vice President, or for Senator or Representative in Congress, shall not be denied or abridged by the United States or any State by reason of failure to pay poll tax or other tax.

Section 2.

The Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

#### **AMENDMENT XXV**

Passed by Congress July 6, 1965. Ratified February 10, 1967.

**Note:** Article II, section 1, of the Constitution was affected by the 25th amendment.

Section 1.

In case of the removal of the President from office or of his death or resignation, the Vice President shall become President.

Section 2.

Whenever there is a vacancy in the office of the Vice President, the President shall nominate a Vice President who shall take office upon confirmation by a majority vote of both Houses of Congress.

Section 3.

Whenever the President transmits to the President pro tempore of the Senate and the Speaker of the House of Representatives his written declaration that he is unable to discharge the powers and duties of his office, and until he transmits to them a written declaration to the contrary, such powers and duties shall be discharged by the Vice President as Acting President.

Section 4.

Whenever the Vice President and a majority of either the principal officers of the executive departments or of such other body as Congress may by law provide, transmit to the President pro tempore of the Senate and the Speaker of the House of Representatives their written declaration that the President is unable to discharge the powers and duties of his office, the Vice President shall immediately assume the powers and duties of the office as Acting President.

---Thereafter, when the President transmits to the President pro tempore of the Senate and the Speaker of the House of Representatives his written declaration that no inability exists, he shall resume the powers and duties of his office unless the Vice President and a majority of either the principal officers of the executive department or of such other body as Congress may by law provide, transmit within four days to the President pro tempore of the Senate and the Speaker of the House of Representatives their written declaration that the President is unable to discharge the powers and duties of his office. Thereupon Congress shall decide the issue, assembling within forty-eight hours for that purpose if not in session. If the Congress, within twenty-one days after receipt of the latter written declaration, or, if Congress is not in session, within twenty-one days after Congress is required to assemble, determines by two-thirds vote of both Houses that the President is unable to discharge the powers and duties of his office,

the Vice President shall continue to discharge the same as Acting President; otherwise, the President shall resume the powers and duties of his office.

**AMENDMENT XXVI**

Passed by Congress March 23, 1971. Ratified July 1, 1971.

Note: Amendment 14, section 2, of the Constitution was modified by section 1 of the 26th amendment.

Section 1.

The right of citizens of the United States, who are eighteen years of age or older, to vote shall not be denied or abridged by the United States or by any State on account of age.

Section 2.

The Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

**AMENDMENT XXVII**

Originally proposed Sept. 25, 1789. Ratified May 7, 1992.

No law, varying the compensation for the services of the Senators and Representatives, shall take effect, until an election of representatives shall have intervened.

[http://www.archives.gov/national-archives-experience/charters/constitution\\_amendments\\_11-27.html](http://www.archives.gov/national-archives-experience/charters/constitution_amendments_11-27.html)



# Appendix G Constitutional Amendments Not Ratified

These are the proposed amendments to the Constitution not ratified by the States.

During the course of our history, in addition to the 27 amendments that have been ratified by the required three-fourths of the States, six other amendments have been submitted to the States but have not been ratified by them.

Beginning with the proposed Eighteenth Amendment, Congress has customarily included a provision requiring ratification within seven years from the time of the submission to the States. The Supreme Court in *Coleman v. Miller*, 307 U.S. 433 (1939), declared that the question of the reasonableness of the time within which a sufficient number of States must act is a political question to be determined by the Congress.

In 1789, twelve proposed articles of amendment were submitted to the States. Of these, Articles III through XII were ratified and became the first ten amendments to the Constitution, popularly known as the Bill of Rights. In 1992, proposed Article II was ratified and became the 27th amendment to the Constitution. Proposed Article I which was not ratified is as follows:

## "Article the first

"After the first enumeration required by the first article of the Constitution, there shall be one Representative for every thirty thousand, until the number shall amount to one hundred, after which the proportion shall be so regulated by Congress, that there shall be not less than one hundred Representatives, nor less than one Representative for every forty thousand persons, until the number of Representatives shall amount to two hundred; after which the proportion shall be so regulated by Congress, that there shall not be less than two hundred Representatives, nor more than one Representative for every fifty thousand persons."

Thereafter, in the 2d session of the Eleventh Congress, the Congress proposed the following article of amendment to the Constitution relating to acceptance by citizens of the United States of titles of nobility from any foreign government.

The proposed amendment, which was not ratified by three-fourths of the States, is as follows:

Resolved by the Senate and House of Representatives of the United States of America in Congress assembled, two thirds of both houses concurring, That the following section be submitted to the legislatures of the several states, which, when ratified by the legislatures of three fourths of the states, shall be valid and binding, as a part of the constitution of the United States.

If any citizen of the United States shall accept, claim, receive or retain any title of nobility or honour, or shall, without the consent of Congress, accept and retain any present, pension, office or emolument of any kind whatever, from any emperor, king, prince or foreign power, such person shall cease to be a citizen of the United States, and shall be incapable of holding any office of trust or profit under them, or either of them.

-----  
The following amendment to the Constitution relating to slavery was proposed by the 2d session of the Thirty-sixth Congress on March 2, 1861, when it passed the Senate, having previously passed the House on February 28, 1861. It is interesting to note in this

connection that this is the only proposed (and not ratified) amendment to the Constitution to have been signed by the President. The President's signature is considered unnecessary because of the constitutional provision that on the concurrence of two-thirds of both Houses of Congress the proposal shall be submitted to the States for ratification.

Resolved by the Senate and House of Representatives of the United States of America in Congress assembled, That the following article be proposed to the Legislatures of the several States as an amendment to the Constitution of the United States, which, when ratified by three-fourths of said Legislatures, shall be valid, to all intents and purposes, as part of the said Constitution, viz:

**"Article Thirteen**

"No amendment shall be made to the Constitution which will authorize or give to Congress the power to abolish or interfere, within any State, with the domestic institutions thereof, including that of persons held to labor or service by the laws of said State."

-----  
A child labor amendment was proposed by the 1st session of the Sixty-eighth Congress on June 2, 1926, when it passed the Senate, having previously passed the House on April 26, 1926. The proposed amendment, which has been ratified by 28 States, to date, is as follows:

Joint Resolution Proposing an Amendment to the Constitution of the United States

Resolved by the Senate and House of Representatives of the United States of America in Congress assembled (two-thirds of each House concurring therein), That the following article is proposed as an amendment to the Constitution of the United States, which, when ratified by the legislatures of three-fourths of the several States, shall be valid to all intents and purposes as a part of the Constitution:

**"Article[no number given].**

"Section 1. The Congress shall have power to limit, regulate, and prohibit the labor of persons under eighteen years of age.

"Section 2. The power of the several States is unimpaired by this article except that the operation of State laws shall be suspended to the extent necessary to give effect to legislation enacted by the Congress."

**HOUSE JOINT RESOLUTION 208**

An amendment relative to equal rights for men and women was proposed by the 2d session of the Ninety-second Congress on March 22, 1972, when it passed the Senate, having previously passed the House on October 12, 1971. The seven-year deadline for ratification of the proposed amendment was extended to June 30, 1982, by the 2d session of the Ninety-fifth Congress. The proposed amendment, which was not ratified by three-fourths of the States by June 30, 1982, is as follows:

Joint Resolution Proposing an Amendment to the Constitution of the United States  
Relative to Equal Rights for Men and Women

Resolved by the Senate and House of Representatives of the United States of America in Congress assembled (two-thirds of each House concurring therein), That the following article is proposed as an amendment to the Constitution of the United States, which shall be valid to all intents and purposes as part of the Constitution when ratified by the legislatures of three-fourths of the several States within seven years from the date of its submission by the Congress:



**"Article[No number given]**

"Section 1. Equality of rights under the law shall not be denied or abridged by the United States or by any State on account of sex.

"Section. 2. The Congress shall have the power to enforce, by appropriate legislation, the provisions of this article.

"Section. 3. This amendment shall take effect two years after the date of ratification."

**HOUSE JOINT RESOLUTION 554**

An amendment relative to voting rights for the District of Columbia was proposed by the 2d session of the Ninety-fifth Congress on August 22, 1978, when it passed the Senate, having previously passed the House on March 2, 1978. The proposed amendment, which was not ratified by three-fourths of the States within the specified seven-year period, is as follows:

Joint Resolution Proposing an Amendment to the Constitution To Provide for Representation of the District of Columbia in the Congress

Resolved by the Senate and House of Representatives of the United States of America in Congress assembled (two-thirds of each House concurring therein), That the following article is proposed as an amendment to the Constitution of the United States, which shall be valid to all intents and purposes as part of the Constitution when ratified by the legislatures of three-fourths of the several States within seven years from the date of its submission by the Congress:

**"Article[No number given]**

"Section 1. For purposes of representation in the Congress, election of the President and Vice President, and article V of this Constitution, the District constituting the seat of government of the United States shall be treated as though it were a State.

"Section. 2. The exercise of the rights and powers conferred under this article shall be by the people of the District constituting the seat of government, and as shall be provided by the Congress.

"Section. 3. The twenty-third article of amendment to the Constitution of the United States is hereby repealed.

"Section. 4. This article shall be inoperative, unless it shall have been ratified as an amendment to the Constitution by the legislatures of three-fourths of the several States within seven years from the date of its submission."